



# Peace Corps

## Basic Spoken Nepali Course



## PREFACE

This book is written with the needs of Peace Corps volunteers of Nepal in mind but is equally useful for any foreigners who want to learn Nepali. The material presented here is based on spoken Nepali. Effort has been made to make the material both linguistically and culturally authentic as far as possible. However, the regional variances (Nepali spoken in Eastern vs. Western parts of Nepal) in spoken Nepali as well as in grammar have caused some difficulty in such an effort. In such cases, we have chosen the ones, which, in our experience and knowledge, have appeared to be most common. The differences between the native Nepali speakers (Brahmins, Kshatrys, etc.) and those who speak it as a second language (Gurungs, Newars, Magars, Rais etc.) cause another set of problems. The Nepali spoken by the first group may be considered as correct but the latter represents the majority of the speakers in the country. The material in this book will reflect the influence of this majority group. So while we accept that some of the grammatical patterns used here are not correct in the purest sense, we can claim that this is the way the majority of people do actually speak and consequently most important for the foreigners to learn.

The book contains forty lessons. Each lesson is supplemented by grammar notes and explanations of the usage of different language items that may cause confusion for the learners. Each lesson also includes a list of new words with its English equivalents and conjugation of verbs whenever necessary. The first fifteen lessons are written in Roman Script. The English translation of the new structures are also included along side the Romanized Nepali. This is done with those language learners in mind who may try to learn the language on their own. These people will find the introduction to the Nepali sounds and pronunciation practice chart in the beginning of the book

and an extensive vocabulary list arranged under different topical headings at the end very useful in their attempt at self learning.

Our years of experience in language teaching and our long association with Peace Corps Nepal as Trainers and Language Specialists have culminated in the production of this book. We have received very valuable comments and criticisms from our fellow trainers and colleagues at different times. More valuable have been the suggestions received from the trainees and volunteers who, as learners using this material, have had better insight into the effectiveness of it. We have attempted to incorporate all these ideas in designing the basic format of the book and choosing the contents as far as possible. Hence we would like to express our appreciation to all of them. Our special thanks also go to Miss Jane Abbot, Peace Corps Volunteer teacher of Tribhuvan University, for going through the grammar notes and providing us with helpful suggestions. We are also grateful to Mr. Krishna Lal Bhai Pradhan whose work in this field has aided our present effort considerably.

**—The Authors**

### **Preface to this Edition**

The present edition contains a number of corrections and additions. An entire new section has been added on Reading and Writing. This was done with a view to meeting the needs of those who wish to learn how to read and write. Also added are (i) some Nepali idioms (ii) adverbial expressions, and (iii) common Nepali proverbs which we hope the learners will find useful.

Every effort has been made to eliminate the typographical errors which appeared in the second edition.

We have received valuable suggestions from many learners who have used this book. We would like to express our grateful thanks to all of them.

**Tika B. Karki  
Chij K. Shrestha**



## CONTENTS

LESSON	FOCUS – TOPICAL/GRAMMATICAL	PAGE
	An Introduction to the Nepali Sound System	(i)
	Pronunciation Practice	(xi)
1.	<b>ho, chha</b> – Verb ‘ <i>To be</i> ’ ‘...eko – Past Tense; ‘...nos. –polite command forms.	1
2.	Continuation of Lesson One	8
3.	Continuation of Lesson One & Two	12
4.	‘...ne’ – Present tense <b>kahāā jaane ?</b> <i>where are you going ?</i>	18
5.	<b>Kati parchha ?</b> – <i>How much does it cost ?</i> <b>paainchha ?</b> – <i>Is it available ? Shopping.</i>	24
6.	Shopping continued.	28
7.	‘...dai. form – present continuous ( <i>I am going</i> ).	31
8.	Simple Present ( <i>I go; He writes</i> ). Habitual present ( <i>I sleep at ten.</i> ) Time of the day.	35
9.	Simple past ( <i>I went; you slept</i> )	47
10.	Feelings ( <i>I felt tired; He felt thirsty</i> )	44
11.	Review and past Tense of verb ‘to be’ ( <i>I was; you were</i> ); days of the week.	40
12.	Parts of body; Present Tense of verb ‘to be’ ( <i>I am,</i> <i>you are</i> )	56
13.	Talking about family members & review	60
14.	Likes and dislikes ( <i>I like Pokhara; I dont’ like raksi</i> )	64
15.	Possession ( <i>I have; He has etc.</i> )	69
16.	More adjectives and post positions ( <i>from, to, until etc.</i> )	72
17.	‘ko laagi. – <i>for ... (purpose)</i> <i>A pen is to write with.</i>	
18.	Directions ( <i>Ilam is in the east</i> )	80

17.	Use of 'le. as an agent. <b>ma haatile Khaanchhu</b> – <i>I eat with my hand.</i>	85
20.	Barganining; 'to be' verb in Past reinforced. Comparisons ( <i>Ram is taller than shyam</i> )	89 75
22	' . era. '...epachhi. & '...i, <b>ma ghara gacra sutchhu</b> ( <i>I'll sleep after going home</i> )	100
23.	Present perfect Tense – ( <i>I have gone there</i> )	106
24.	'...daa kheri, – while, when. <b>amerikaa baaTa aandaakheri mailē reDiyo Kinē</b> ( <i>I bought a radio while coming from America</i> ).	112
25.	Impersonal verbs ( <b>dekhincha</b> – <i>is seen</i> ; <b>suninchha</b> – <i>is heard</i> )	117
26.	Past habitual ( <b>ma raksi khaanthē</b> – <i>I used to drink</i> )	122
27.	'...bhandaa pahile. – before...ing ( <i>Where were you before coming to Nepal?</i> )	126
28.	Past perfect ( <i>I had gone; you had written a letter</i> )	130
29.	Past Progressive ( <i>I was going; you were writing</i> )	136
30.	All forms of present and Past progressive.	141
31.	Conditional clause ' <b>bhane.</b> – <i>if</i> <i>If I have headache, I take aspirins.</i>	145
32.	<b>jahile pani</b> – <i>any time</i> : <b>jataapani</b> – <i>anywhere</i>	149
33.	<b>eko hunaale</b> – Because clause. <b>phursad nabhaakole ma aaina</b> – <i>I didn't come because I didn't have free time.</i>	153
34.	Relative clause. <i>The school where he teaches is in a village near Pokhara.</i>	158
35.	Though, even if clause. <i>Even though my watch is old, it keeps good time.</i>	162
36.	Passives. <i>Nepal is spoken in all government offices.</i>	168

37. Reported speech.	
<i>Ram said he was not feeling well to day.</i>	171
38. <b>na aaunjel, bittikāi</b>	
<i>I went to school right after eating.</i>	178
39. <b>rahechha.</b>	182
<i>I found Pokhara very beautiful.</i>	
40. Conditional clause. <b>eko bhae.</b>	
<i>I would have gone to Pokhara if you had not come.</i>	189
41. Some Nepali Idioms	189
42. Adverbial Expressions	192
43. Common Nepali Proverbs	194
44. Glossary (Words used in this book)	177
45. Weight, Measurement etc.	209
46. Particles	210
47. Numerals	211
49. Ordinal Numbers	213
50. General Vocabulary	214
51. Conjugation Tables	230
52. Reading and Writing Section.	237
53. References	266

## AN INTRODUCTION TO THE NEPALI SOUND SYSTEM

The Nepali alphabet is arranged in the following order. To use a Nepali-English Dictionary, this order must be memorized. The Roman letters used in this book are given with their equivalents in DEVNAGARI SCRIPT.

### VOWELS

अ	आ	इ	ई	उ	ऊ	ए	ऐ	ओ	औ
a	aa	i	ī	u	ū	e	ai	o	au

### CONSONANTS

क	ख	ग	घ	ङ
k	kh	g	gh	ng
च	छ	ज	झ	ञ
ch	chh	j	jh	n
ट	ठ	ड	ढ	ण
T	Th	D	Dh	n
त	थ	द	ध	न
t	th	d	dh	n
प	फ	ब	भ	म
p	ph	b	bh	m
य	र	ल	व	श
y	r	l	w	sh
ष	स	ह	क्ष	त्र
sh	s	h	ksh	tra
		ज्ञ		
		gyn		

### NOTE

- 1) The vowels i and u have two forms in written Nepali-short form : (इ उ) and long form : (ई ऊ). However, since no distinction is made in spoken Nepali, they will be treated as the same in this book.

- 2) There are three different “s” sounds in written Nepali. Again, in common spoken Nepali, they are all pronounced as ‘स’
- 3) All Nepali vowel sounds have nasalized forms.

### A brief guide to the production of the Nepali Sounds.

#### VOWEL-

1. अ (a)– It is a short, mid-central vowel similar to the first vowel in the English word ‘about’. In its articulation, the opening between the jaws is narrow and the lips are rounded.

अब अब (aba)                      now दस (das) — ten  
 असल (asal)                      good उठ (uTha) — stand up !

2. आ (aa) – It is a long, low, unsounded vowel similar to the ‘a’ sound in the English word “father”. In its articulation, the middle of the tongue is slightly raised, the opening between the jaws is medium to wide, and the lips are not rounded.

आमा (aamaa) — mother न आउ (na aaU) — don’t come !  
 आगो (aago) — fire जरा (jaraa) — root

3. इ (i) – is a short, high front, unrounded vowel, close but not similar to the English vowel (i) in ‘fit’. In order to produce this vowel, the tip of the tongue should be raised toward the hard palate.

इनार (inaar) — well गीत (git) — song  
 इन्द्र (indra) — the god of rain पनि (pani) — also

4. ई (i)– long but produced the same way (i) is. (Although no distinction is made in spoken Nepali, those letters may have a different meaning when written differently).

ईश्वर (iswar)                      God दिदी (didi) — elder sister  
 पानी (paani) — water बहिनी (bahini) — younger sister



ई (i) Long — in contrast of short इ (i)  
तीर (tir) — arrow तिर (tira) — towards

5. उ (u) — is a short, high back, rounded vowel, very close to the vowel in the English word 'put'.

उठ (uTha) — stand up !  
बाउन्न (baaunna) — fifty-two  
जाउ (jaau) — go !

6. ऊ (u) — is long but produced the same as (u) is.

ऊन (un) — wool  
ठूलो (Thulo) — big  
फूल (phul) — flower

7. ए (e) — is long, high-mid, front, unrounded vowel and the tongue is slightly raised in its articulation.

एक (ek) — one खाएकोछु (khaaecho chhu)—  
गए (gae) — they went. I have eaten.

8. ऐ (ai) — is a low-mid, front, unrounded diphthong sound which is a combination of (a) and (i), The first sound is shorter than the other.

ऐना (aina) — looking glass बजै (bajai) — grandmother  
सबै (sabai) — all मकै (makai) — corn  
आजै (aajai) — to-day (emphatic) ऐठन (aiThan) — nightmare ✓✓

9. ओ (o) — is long, high-mid, back rounded vowel.

ओत (ot) — shelter  
फोहोर (phohor) — dirty  
बाटो (baaTo) — road

10. औ (au) — is a long, low-mid, back and rounded diphthong sound—a combination of अ and उ).

( iii )

आलो	(aulo) – malaria	आपधी	(ausadhi) – medicine
थियो	(thiyau) – you were	कोवा	(kauwaa) crow
जौ	(jau) – barley		

## CONSONANTS

Nepali has thirty three consonant sounds twenty-five of which are divided into five broad categories according to the place in the mouth in which they are articulated.

1. Velar consonants	क	ख	ग	घ	ङ
	k	kh	g	gh	ng
2. Palatal consonants	च	छ	ज	झ	ञ
	ch	chh	ja	jha	n
3. Retroflex consonants	ट	ठ	ड	ढ	ण
	T	Th	D	Dh	n
4. Dental Consonants	त	थ	द	ध	न
	t	th	d	dh	n
5. Bi-labial consonants	प	फ	ब	भ	म
	p	ph	b	bh	m

1. Velar Consonant – sounds which are articulated at the soft part of the palate (velum) located above the root of the tongue, are called velar sounds. In the articulation of these sounds the back of the tongue touches the soft palate and there is a complete closure of the air passage.

1.1 क (k) – is an unvoiced, non-aspirate consonant. It's close equivalent sound in English is 'k' as in 'kite'.

कलम	(kalam) — pen	नाकल	(nahkal) — copy
छाक	(chaak) — food for one meal.		

1.2 ख (kh) – is the aspirated form of ‘k’; While pronouncing ‘ख’, a strong release of breath is noticed.

खानु (khaanu) – to eat

पखनु (parkhanu) – to wait

लेख (lehh) – article

1.3 ग (g) – a voiced counterpart of क (k)

गन (gana) – count

पागल (paagal) – insane

काग (kaag) – crow

1.4 घ (gh) – is a voiced counterpart of ‘ख’ and the aspirated form of ‘ग’.

घर (ghar) house

उघार्नु (ughaarnu) – to open

बाघ (baagh) – tiger

1.5 ङ (ng) – is voiced and nasal. It usually occurs in the middle and final positions only. It is similar to the “ng” sound in the English words ‘finger’, ‘song’ except that the ‘g’ part is not pronounced.

नङ (nang) – finger or toe nail

रङ (rang) – merriment, color

टाङ्गो (Taango) – a long stick

2. PALATAL CONSONANTS – The roof of the mouth is called the palate. Sounds articulated at the hard palate are called palatal sounds. In the articulation of these sounds, the middle of the tongue touches the palate and the breath passes from both sides of the tongue.

2.1 च (ch) – is an unvoiced and non-aspirated palatal consonant. Its closest English equivalent (but not exactly the same) is the 'ch' sound in 'church'.

चार	– (chaar)	– four	वचन – bachan – word
चम्चा	– (chamchhaa)	– spoon	

2.2 छ (chh) – is a voiceless aspirated counterpart of (ch). It has no equivalent in English.

छ	– (chha)	– six
कान्छी	– (kaanchhi)	– youngest sister, daughter
माछा	– (maachhaa)	– fish

2.3 ज (j) – It is a voiced, unaspirated palatal sound.

जरा	(jaraa)	root
आज	(aaja)	– to-day
भजन	(bhajan)	– hymn, song of worship

2.4 झ (jh) – is an aspirated counterpart of (j).

झूठो	(jhuTho)	– lie
बुझ्नु	(bujhnu)	– to understand
साझा	(saajhaa)	– partnership

2.5 ञ (n) – is a nasalized palatal sound. It is so rarely used that it need not be committed to memory.

3. Retroflex consonants–sounds produced with the tip of the tongue arching backward in the oral cavity so as to come in contact with the highest part of the roof, are called Retroflex sounds.

3.1 ट (T) – is an unvoiced, non-aspirate retroflex consonant.

टाउको (Taauko) – head घटाउ (ghaTaau) – subtract !  
केटा केटी (keTaa keTi) – children

3.2 ठ (Th) – is an unvoiced aspirate retroflex sound.

ठाउँ (Thaaū) – place कोठा (koThaa) – room  
अठार (aThaara) – eighteen

3.3 ड (D) – is voiced, non-aspirate retroflex consonant.

डर (Dar) – fear लडाई (laDaai) – fight  
हड (haaD) – bone

3.4 ढ (Dh) – is voiced, aspirate retroflex consonant.

ढोका (Dhokaa) – door बढाउनु (baDhaarnu) – to sweep  
चढ (chaDha) – climb

3.5 ण (n) – It is so rarely used that it need not be committed to memory.

4. Dental Consonants – Sounds which are articulated at either the upper or lower teeth are called Dentals. In pronouncing the dental sounds in Nepali the tip of the tongue touches the root of the upper teeth and when the tongue is removed from the root of the teeth, the air suddenly escapes through the mouth.

4.1 त (t) – is an unvoiced, non-aspirate dental consonant.

तास (taas) – a playing card बत्तास (bataas) – wind  
सर्बत (sarbat) – cold drink (sweet)

4.2 थ (th) – is an unvoiced, aspirate dental consonant.

थाल (thaal) – plate बथान (bathaan) group, swarm  
अनाथ (anaath) orphan

4.3 द (d) – is a voiced, non-aspirate dental consonant.

दाम (daam) – price

बिबाद (bibaad) – argument

बदाम (badaam) – peanut.

4.4 ध (dh) – is a voiced, aspirate dental consonant.

धर्म (dharma) – religion

आधा (aadhaa) – half

राजधानी (raajdhanaa) – capital

4.5 न (n) – is a nasal dental consonant.

नाम (naam) – name

इनार (inaar) – well.

पानी (paani) – water

5. Bi-labial consonants – In the articulation of these sounds, the air passage is completely blocked by closing the lips and then they are opened so that the air suddenly escapes from the mouth.

5.1 प (p) – is unvoiced, non-aspirate bilabial consonant sound.

पानी (paani) – water

तपाईं – (tapaai) – you (Hon.)

ताप (taap) – heat.

5.2 फ (ph) – is unvoiced, aspirate bilabial consonant sound.

फोहोर (phohor) – dirty

फलफूल (phalphul) – fruits

जवाफ (jawaaph) – answer

5.3 ब (b) – is voiced, non-aspirate, bilabial consonant sound.

बाटो (baaTo) – way

बराबर (baraabar) – equal

बा (baa) – father



5.4 भ (bh) – is voiced, aspirate bilabial consonant sound.

भित्र (bhitra) – inside

अभागी (abhaagi) – unlucky

5.5 म (m) – is a bilabial nasal sound.

मलाई (malaai) – me

कमला (kamalaa) – Kamala

आमा (aamaa) – mother

6. The remaining consonant sounds–

6.1 य (y) – is unrounded, palatal semi-vowel sound.

यता (yataa) – hither

बयासी (bayaasi) – eighty two

समय (samaya) – time.

6.2 र (r) – is a voiced, non-aspirate, rolled, alveolar consonant sound.

In its articulation, the tip of the tongue makes a rapid succession of taps against the teeth-ridge, producing a rolling sound.

राम्रो (raamro) – good, pretty

कराउ – (karaau) – shout !

सारी (saari) – saari

6.3 ल (l) – is a voiced, non-aspirate lateral sound. To produce this sound the blade of tongue should touch the teeth-ridge, and the air passage should be blocked in the middle so that air passes between the edges of the tongue, and the back of the teeth.

लामो (laamo) – long

कलम – (kalam) – pen

दाल (daal) – lentil soup

6.4 व (w) – is a bilabial semi-vowel. In its articulation the two lips touch one another at the two ends, leaving in the middle a free passage for the outgoing breath to escape.

(ix)

There is a common tendency to pronounce it as ब

वारी (waari) – this side of a river or a street.  
वरिपरि (waripari) – around

6.5 स (s) – is an unvoiced dental sibilant sound. In its articulation, the blade of the tongue touches the teeth-ridge, the front of the tongue being at the same time somewhat raised in the direction of the hard palate.

सारी (saari) – saari                      कसरी – (kasari) – how  
पचास (pachaas) – fifty

6.6 श र ष – In Nepali words, these ‘s’ sounds are pronounced as स (s).

6.7 ह (h) – is a glottal fricative.

हामी (haami) – we                      मह (maha) – honey  
शहर (shahar) – city                      फोहोर (phor) – last year

7. Besides these above thirty three consonant sounds, there are three compound consonant sounds which are represented by three single alphabets in written Nepali.

7.1 क्ष – is a combination of k and sh  
अक्षर (ahshar) – alphabet

6.2 त्र – is a combination of t and r.  
भित्र (bhitra) – inside

7.3 ज्ञ – is a combination of gy + n  
ज्ञान (gyaan) – knowledge.

(x)

## PRONUNCIATION PRACTICE

### 1. Practice the following sounds :

Non-aspirate

vs

Aspirate

#### A. क (k)

(kh)

काम (kaam) – work

खाम (khaam) – envelope

कर (kar) – tax

खर (khar) – thatch

कुन (kun) – which

खुन (khun) – blood

#### B. ग (g)

(gh)

गर (gar) Do !

घर (ghar) – home

गाउ (gaau) – Sing !

घाउ (ghaau) – wound

गोडा (goDaa) – foot

घोडा (ghoDaa) horse

An Aspirated sound is one accompanied by a strong puff of air. Unaspirated sounds are not released with a puff of air.

Don't hesitate to exaggerate the aspiration of a sound in the beginning.

### 2. Practice the following sounds in contrast :

#### A. Short Vowel

vs

#### Long vowel

अ (a) as in 'about'

आ (aa) – as in 'father'

अरु (aru) – other, more

आरु (aaru) – peach

कम (kam) – less

काम (kaam) – work

पनि (pani) – also

पानी (paani) – water

बजे (baje) – o'clock

बाजे (baaje) – grand father

#### B. Voiced non-aspirate

vs

#### Voiced aspirate

ब (b)

भ (bh)

बन्नु (bannu) – be made

भन्नु (bhannu) – tell

बारी (baari) – dry field  
बोली (boli) – speech

भारी (bhaari) – load  
भोली (bholi) – tomorrow

Sounds in the production of which vocal chords vibrate are called voiced sounds. The vocal chords don't vibrate in the production of voiceless sounds.

### 3. Practice the following sounds:

**Non-aspirate**

**vs**

**Aspirate**

**Voiceless**

च (ch)  
चीन (chin) – China  
चिन्नु (chinnu) – recognize

छ (chh)  
छीन (chhin) – moment  
छिन्नु (chhinnu) – cut through

**Voiced**

ज (j)  
जान्नु (jaannu) – know  
जन (jan) – people

झ (jh)  
झान्नु (jhaannu) – put butter and  
fried spices into the daal.  
झन (jhan) – more

**Voiceless**

प (pa)  
पर्सि (parsi) – day after tomorrow  
पोहोर (pohor) – last year  
पाल्नु (paalnu) – tame

फ (ph)  
फर्सि (pharsi) – pumpkin  
फोहोर (phohor) – dirty  
फाल्नु (phaalnu) – throw away

#### 4. Practice the following sounds:

Voiceless	vs	Voiced
कति (kati) – how much		गति (gati) – speed
काम (kaam) – work		गाम (gaam) – villa
खर (khar) – thatch		घर (ghar) – home
खाम (khaam) – envelope		घाम (ghaam) – sun
चरा (charaa) – bird		जरा (jaraa) – root
चोर्नु (chornu) – steal		जोर्नु (jornu) – join
छर्नु (chharnu) – sow		झर्नु (jharnu) – descend
छुट (chhuT) – rebate		झूट (jhuT) – lie
पानी (paani) – water		बानी (baani) – habit
पोका (pokaa) – bundle, packet		बोका (bokaa) – uncastrated male goat
फरिया (phariyaa) – sari		भरिया (bhariyaa) – porter
फुट्नु (phuTnu) – break		भुट्नु (bhuTnu) – fry.

You can feel the vibration of your vocal chords while producing the voiced consonants. Note the difference in the meaning when sound is voiced and not voiced.

#### 5. The [T] and [D] sounds of Nepali are usually difficult for native English speakers. Listen and practice the following:

Non-aspirated retroflex		Aspirated retroflex
	Voiceless	
ट (T)		ठ (Th)
टोक् (Tok) – Bite !		ठोक् (Thok) – Hit !
काट् (kaaT) – Cut		काठ् (kaaTh) – wood
बाटो (baaTo) – road		बाठो (baaTho) – clever
	Voiced	
ड (D)		ढ (Dh)
डोका (Dokaa) – basket		ढोका (Dhokaa) – door

डाक्नु	(Daaknu) – call, summon	ढाक्नु	(Dhaaknu) – cover
डाँटनु	(DāāTnu) – bully	ढाँटनु	(DhāāTnu) – lie

Sounds produced with the apex of the tongue arching backward in the oral cavity are called **RETROFLEX** sounds.

6. Listen and practice the following dental sounds:

Non-aspirated		Aspirated	
voiceless			
त	(t)	थ	(th)
ताल	(taal) – lake	थाल	(thaal) – tray, a big plate
ताप	(taap) – heat	थाप्	(thaap) – hold out !
सात	(saat) – seven	साथ	(saath) – with
voiced			
द	(d)	ढ	(dh)
दाइ	(daai) – elder brother	धाइ	(dhaai) – nurse, midwife
दान	(daan) – gift	धान	(dhaan) – paddy
दाम	(daam) – price	धाम	(dhaam) – religious place

Sounds which are articulated at either the upper or the lower teeth are called **DENTAL** sounds. The English dentals (like in “think”) and Nepali dentals are pronounced with a slight difference. Listening carefully is the only way to discern this difference.

7. Practice the following sounds in contrast:

a) Voiceless Retroflex		Voiceless Dental	
ट	(T)	त	(t)
टीन	(Tin) – tin	तीन	(tin) – three
टार्नु	(Taarnu) – put off	तार्नु	(Taarnu) – fry
पाट	(paaT) – jute	पात	(paat) – leaf



**b) Voiced Retroflex****Voiced Dental**

ड	(D)	non-aspirated	द	(d)	
डर	(Dar)	– fear	दर	(dar)	– rate
डाम	(Daam)	– mark	दाम	(daam)	– price
डिल	(Dil)	– ridge, edge	दिल	(dil)	– heart

**c) Voiceless Retroflex****Voiced Dental**

ठ	(T)	aspirated	थ	(th)
ठिटी	(ThiTi)	– young girl	थिति	(thiti) – order
ठाम	(Thaam)	– place	थाम	(thaam) – pillar
साठी	(saaThi)	– sixty	साथी	(saathi) – friend

**d) Voiced Retroflex****Voiced Dental**

ढ	(Dh)	aspirated	ध	(dh)
ढाप	(Dhaap)	– pat on back	धाप	(dhaap) marsh
ढोका	(Dhokaa)	– door	धोका	(dhokaa) – deceit
ढाक	(Dhaak)	– cover !	धाक	(dhaak) – boasting

## LESSON I

### VOCABULARY

chha	is	kholnu	to open
dinu	to give	kitaab	book
garnu	to do	mero	my, mine
ghar	home, house	naam	name
hajur	yes (polite)	namaste	hello, good-
ho	is (definitive)		bye, greetings
hoina	is not (definitive)	ni	and how about
jholaa	shoulder bag	paDhnu	to read
kaalo	black	seto	white
kaapi	note book	ta	then
kahāā	where	tapaaiko	your, yours
kalam	pen	tyo	that
kamij	shirt	wahāāko	his, her, hers
kasko	whose	yo	this
kasto	what color, how (Qualitative)		
ke	what		

### PART I

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. namaste.<br>namaste.                                   | Hello.<br>Hello.   |
| 2. tapaaiko naam ke ho ?<br>mero naam raam ho.            | What is your name ?<br>My name is Ram.   |
| 3. wahāāko naam ke ho ?<br>wahāāko naam krishna ho.       | What is his name ?<br>His name is Krishna.   |
| 4. tapaaiko ghar kahāā ho ?<br><br>mero ghar amerikaa ho. | Where do you come from ?<br>(lit. Where is your house ?)<br>I am from the States.<br>(lit. My home is America) |

5. wahāāko ghar kahāā ho ?  
wahāāko ghar nepaal ho.

Where does he come from ?  
He is from Nepal.

## PART II

### (a)

1. yo ke ho ?  
yo kalam ho.

What is this ?  
This is a pen.

2. yo kasko kalam ho ?  
yo mero kalam ho.

Whose pen is this ?  
This is my pen.

3. tyo ke ho ?  
tyo kitaab ho.

What is that ?  
That is a book.

4. tyo kasko kitaab ho ?  
tyo wahāāko kitaab ho.

Whose book is that ?  
That is his book.

5. yo ni ?  
tyo tapaalko kitaab ho.

And this ?  
That is your book.

### (b)

1. tyo ke ho ?  
yo kitaab ho.

What is that ?  
This is a book.

2. tyo kasko kitaab ho ?  
yo mero kitaab ho.

Whose book is that ?  
This is my book.

3. kitaab kholnus.  
tapaaile ke gareko ?  
maile kitaab kholeko.

Open the book, please.  
What did you do ?  
I opened the book.

4. wahāāle ke gareko ?  
wahāāle kitaab kholeko.

What did he do ?  
He opened the book.

(c)

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. jim !<br>hajur.                           | Jim !<br>Yes.                                   |
| 2. tyo kalam ho ?<br>hoina.                  | Is that a pen ?<br>No, it isn't.                |
| 3. tyo ke ho ta ?<br>yo kaapi ho.            | What is it then ?<br>It's a note-book.          |
| 4. tyo kasko kaapi ho ?<br>yo mero kaapi ho. | Whose note-book is that ?<br>It's my note-book. |

(d)

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. tyo ke ho ?<br>yo kalam ho.                                | What is that ?<br>It's a pen.   |
| 2. tyo kasko kalam ho ?<br>yo mero kalam ho.                  | Whose pen is that ?<br>It's my pen.                                     |
| 3. tapaalko kalam kasto chha ?<br>mero kalam kaalo chha.      | What color is your pen ?<br>My pen is black.                            |
| 4. kalam dinos.<br>tapaalle ke gareko ?<br>maile kalam dieko. | Please give (me) the pen.<br>What did you do ?<br>I gave (you) the pen. |

(e)

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. tyo ke ho ?<br>yo jholaa ho.                    | What is that ?<br>It's a shoulder bag.         |
| 2. tyo kasko jholaa ho ?<br>yo wahāāko jholaa ho.  | Whose bag is that ?<br>It's his bag.           |
| 3. tyo jholaa kasto chha ?<br>yo jholaa seto chha. | What color is that bag ?<br>This bag is white. |

4. tyo jholaa dinos.  
tapaalle ke gareko ?  
maile jholaa dieko.

Please give (me) that bag.  
What did you do ?  
I gave (you) the bag.

(f)

1. maaik ji !  
hajur.  
2. tyo kasko kitaab ho ?  
yo mero kitaab ho.  
3. paDhnos.  
tapaalle ke gareko ?  
maile paDheko.  
4. tapaalle kasko kitaab paDheko ?  
maile mero kitaab paDheko.

Mike !  
Yes.  
Whose book is that ?  
This is my book.  
Please read it.  
What did you do ?  
I read.  
Whose book did you read ?  
I read my book.

#### GRAMMAR NOTES

1. The suffix 'ko' is attached to the end of nouns and some pronouns to denote possession.

maaik	– Mike	maaikko	– Mike's
tapaal	– you	tapaalko	– yours
wahãã	– he	wahããko	– his, her, her

#### but Note

ma	– I	mero	– mine
u	– he	usko	his
haami	– we	haamro	– our, ours.

2. The word 'namaste' is used both when people meet and part, taking the place of 'good morning', 'good night', 'good bye', etc. 'namaskar' is another form of greeting (less common than 'namaste') used when more respect or courtesy is appropriate.

3. **Word order** One important difference between English and Nepali is word order. In Nepali, the verb always comes at the end of the sentence. Note the word order in the follownig sentence:

mero naam kamalaa ho !  
My name Kamala is.

tapaako ghar kahāā ho ?  
Your house where is.

4. 'Hajur' 'Yes' (polite), is used in response after one is addressed. It also can mean 'I beg your pardon' when pronounced with rising intonation.
5. 'ji or jyu', is usually added to the end of people's names to express respect.
6. 'hoīna' does not always correspond to 'no' in English but instead usually to 'no, it isn't'.  
  
'ho' may be used as a single-word reply in affirmation or to mean 'Yes, it is'.

#### 7. Honorific Commands

kholnus or kholnos.	Please, open it.
paDhunus or paDhnos.	Please, read it.

8. In spoken Nepali the 'eko' form is very commonly used in simple past, past Perfect and present progressive tenses.

<b>Examples.</b> maaikle ke gareko ?	What did Mike do ?
maaikle kitaab kholeko.	Mike opened the book.
ke paDheko ?	What are you reading ?
ke lekheko ?	What are you writing ?

9. 'le' is attached to the subject in the past tense, if the verb is transitive. A transitive verb is one that requires an object.

#### Example.

Transitive verb, i.e. those having objects

khaanu	- to eat
banda garnu	- to close
garnu	- to do



**Intransitive verb, i.e. those not needing objects.**

**sutnu**

**– to sleep**

**jaanu**

**– to go**

10. **'ni'** is an interrogative particle which is used at the end of a sentence. It means, ... and how about ?
11. **'ta'** is a commonly used particle with no literal meaning. It's meaning varies. In the following dialogue, it means *'then'*.

tyo raamko kitaab ho ?	Is that Ram's book ?
hoina.	No, it isn't.
kasko ho ta ?	Whose is it, then ?
mero ho.	It's mine.

12. The English Verb *'is'* has three different equivalents in Nepali:  
**'ho'** **'chha'** and **'hunchha'**

(a) **'ho'** (negative **'hoina'**) is used to define something or somebody. Examples.

kaaThmaanDu nepaalko	Kathmandu is the capital
raajdhani ho.	of Nepal.
yo mero ghar ho.	This is my house.

(b) **'chha'** (negative **'chhaina'**) is used to locate things and people.

kalam Tebulmaa chha.	The pen is on the table.
mero bhaai gharmaa chha.	My brother is at home.

**'chha'** is also used to state the quality of something or somebody.

usko kamij raamro chha.	His shirt is nice.
mero kalam kaalo chha.	My pen is black.

(c) Study the following sentences carefully:

mero ghar raato chha.  
raato ghar mero ho.

My house is red.  
The red house is mine.

13. Note the different meanings of 'kasto'–

suntala kasto chha ?  
tapaako kamij kasto chha?  
kasto chha ?

How does the orange taste ?  
What is your shirt like ?  
How is it ?

## LESSON 2

### VOCABULARY.

aamaa	mother	ma	I
amilo	sour	maile	I (in past tense with transitive verb)
baa	father		
banda garnu	to close, to shut	malaai	to me, for me
chhaina	isn't	paani	water
chiso	cold	pani	also
chiyaa	tea	sanchai	fine, well
Dhokaa	door	suntalaa	orange
khaanu	to eat, to drink	sayaau	apple
linu	to take	taato	hot

### PART 1

(a)

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. namaste.<br>namaste.   | Greetings !<br>Greetings !                                 |
| 2. sanchai ?<br>sanchai.  | How are you ?<br>Fine, thanks                              |
| 3. tapaaiko ghar kahāā ho ?<br>mero ghar amerikaa ho.               | Where are you from ?<br>I am from the States.              |
| 4. tapaaiko baako naam ke ho ?<br>mero baako naam bil ho.           | What's your father's name ?<br>My father's name is Bill.   |
| 5. tapaaiko aamaako naam ke ho ?<br>mero aamaako naam baarbaraa ho. | What's your mother's name?<br>My mother's name is Barbara. |

(b)

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. tapaailaai kasto chha ?<br>malaai sanchai chha.           | How are you ?<br>I'm fine.                       |
| 2. tapaailaai ni ?<br>malaai pani sanchai chha.              | And you ?<br>I'm fine too.                       |
| 3. tapaako ghar ameriakaa ho ?<br>ho, mero ghar amerikaa ho. | Are you from America ?<br>Yes, I'm from America. |
| 4. amerikamaa kahāā ?<br>kyaaliphorniyaamaa.                 | Where in America. ?<br>In California.            |

## PART II

(a)

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. tyo ke ho ?<br>tyo Dhokaa ho.   | What's that ?<br>That's a door.                                    |
| 2. Dhokaa kholnos.<br>tapaale ke gareko ?<br>maile Dhokaa kholeko.           | Open the door, please.<br>What did you do ?<br>I opened the door.  |
| 3. wahāāle ke gareko ?<br>wahāāle Dhokaa kholeko.                            | What did he do ?<br>He opened the door.                            |
| 4. Dhokaa banda garnos.<br>tapaale ke gareko ?<br>maile Dhokaa banda gareko. | Close the door, please.<br>What did you do ?<br>I closed the door. |
| 5. wahāāle ke gareko ?<br>wahāāle Dhokaa banda gareko.                       | What did he do ?<br>He closed the door.                            |

(b)

- |                                   |                                   |
|-----------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 1. tyo ke ho ?<br>yo suntalaa ho. | What is that ?<br>It's an orange. |
|-----------------------------------|-----------------------------------|

2. khaanos  
tapaalle ke gareko ?  
maile suntalaa khaaeko.
3. suntalaa kasto chha ?  
suntalaa guliyo chha.
4. malaai pani dinos.  
linos.

Have some, please.  
What did you do ?  
I ate the orange.  
How is the orange ?  
The orange is sweet.  
Give me some, too, please.  
Take it, please.

(c)

1. tyo suntalaa ho ?  
hoina.
2. ke ho, ta ?  
syaau ho.
3. khaanos.  
tapaalle ke gareko ?  
maile syaau khaaeko.
4. syaau amilo chha ?  
chhaina, guiliyo chha.

Is than an orange ?  
No, it is not.  
What is it, then ?  
It's an apple.  
Have some, please.  
What did you do ?  
I ate the apple.  
Is the apple sour ?  
No, it isn't. It's sweet

(d)

1. chiyaa khaanus.  
tapaalle ke gareko ?  
maile chiyaa khaaeko.
2. wahāāle paani khaaeko ?  
hoina, wahāāle pani chiyaa  
khaaeko.
3. chiyaa chiso chha ?  
chhaina.
4. kasto chha, ta ?  
taato chha.

Have some tea, please.  
What did you do ?  
I drank some tea.  
Did he drink water ?  
No, he also drank tea.  
Is the tea cold ?  
No, it isn't.  
How is it, then ?  
It's hot.

## GRAMMAR NOTES.

1. **tapaa~~la~~ai kasto chha ?** Though not idiomatic, it is quite frequently used by the Nepalese in contact with foreigners (a direct translation '*How are you*' ?)
2. **sanchai**, emphatic form of **sancho**. lit., well, in good health, it means. How are you?



## LESSON 3

### VOCABULARY

aaphno	own	katiwaTaa	how many
aaunu	to come	khaliti	pocket
baahira	outside	ko	who
bahini	sister (younger)	kun	which
bhaai	brother (younger)	maa	at, in, on
bhitra	in, inside	nira	near
chaahl	one (specifies)	raajya	state
chaar	four	raakhnu	to put
chhan	are	raato	red
daai	brother (older)	shahar	town, city
dui	two	ti	those
ek	one	timi	you (Familiar)
hun	are	tin	three
jaanu	to go	usko	his, hers
jhyaal	window	usle	he, she
kaslaai	whom	yi	these
kati	how much		

### PART 1

#### (a)

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. tapaalko naam ke ho ?<br>mero naam maaik ho | What's your name ?<br>My name is Mike.    |
| 2. wahaako ni ?<br>wahaako naam PiTar ho.      | And his ?<br>His name is Peter.           |
| 3. tapaalko ghar kahaa ho ?<br>amerikaamaa     | Where do you come from ?<br>From America. |
| 4. kun raajyamaa ?<br>waashingTanmaa.          | Which state ?<br>In Washington.           |

5. **tapaalko shaharko naam ke ho ? What is the name of your city?**  
**siyaaTal. Seattle.**

**(b)**

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. <b>namaste.</b>                      | <b>Hello.</b>                               |
| <b>namaste.</b>                         | <b>Hello.</b>                               |
| 2. <b>u ko ho ?</b>                     | <b>Who is he ?</b>                          |
| <b>u mero bhaai ho.</b>                 | <b>He is my younger brother.</b>            |
| 3. <b>usko naam ke ho ?</b>             | <b>What's his name ?</b>                    |
| <b>usko naam raam ho.</b>               | <b>His name is Ram.</b>                     |
| 4. <b>tapaalko daai hunuhunchha ?</b>   | <b>Do you have an older brother ?</b>       |
| <b>hunuhunna.</b>                       | <b>No, I don't.</b>                         |
| 5. <b>didi ni ?</b>                     | <b>How about an older sister ?</b>          |
| <b>didi pani hunuhunna.</b>             | <b>I don't have an older sister either.</b> |
| 6. <b>bahini chha ta ?</b>              | <b>Do you have a younger sister then?</b>   |
| <b>chha.</b>                            | <b>Yes, I do.</b>                           |
| 7. <b>tapaalko bahiniko naam ke ho?</b> | <b>What's your sister's name ?</b>          |
| <b>mero bahiniko naam sitaa ho.</b>     | <b>My sister's name is Sita.</b>            |

**PART II**

**(a)**

- |                                     |                                       |
|-------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| 1. <b>tyo ke ho ?</b>               | <b>What's that ?</b>                  |
| <b>yo kitaab ho.</b>                | <b>It's a book.</b>                   |
| 2. <b>tyo kasko kitaab ho ?</b>     | <b>Whose book is that ?</b>           |
| <b>yo mero kitaab ho.</b>           | <b>It's my book.</b>                  |
| 3. <b>tyo kitaabko naam ke ho ?</b> | <b>What's the name of that book ?</b> |
| <b>yo kitaabko naam 'Basic,</b>     | <b>It's name is 'Basic Course</b>     |
| <b>Course in Spoken Nepali' ho.</b> | <b>in Spoken Nepali'.</b>             |

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 4. PaDhnos.<br>tapaalle ke gareko ?<br>maile kitaab paDheko. | Read it, please.<br>What did you do ?<br>I read the book. |
| 5. wahaale ke gareko ?<br>wahaale kitaab paDheko.            | What did he do ?<br>He read the book.                     |

(b)

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. tyo ke ho ?<br>yo kalam ho.  | What is that ?<br>It's a pen.   |
| 2. tyo kasko kalam ho ?<br>yo mero kalam ho.  | Whose pen is that ?<br>It's my pen.   |
| 3. tyo kalam wahaalaai dinos.<br>tapaalle kalam kaslaai dieko ?<br>maile kalam wahaalaai dieko. | Please give that pen to him.<br>Whom did you give your pen ?<br>I gave him the pen. |
| 4. tapaalle wahaalaai kasko<br>kalam dieko ?<br>maile wahaalaai mero<br>kalam dieko.            | Whose pen did you give him ?<br><br>I gave him my pen.                              |

(c)

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. jhyaal banda gara.<br>timile ke gareko ?<br>maile jhyaal banda gareko. | Shut the window.<br>What did you do ?<br>I shut the window.     |
| 2. jhyaal khola.<br>usle ke kholeko ?<br>usle jhyaal kholeko.             | Open the window.<br>What did he open ?<br>He opened the window. |
| 3. usle Dhokaa kholeko ?<br>hoina, usle jhyaal kholeko.                   | Did he open the door ?<br>No, he opened the window.             |

(d)

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. baahira jaau.<br>timi kahāā gaeko ?<br>ma baahira gaeko. | Go outside.<br>Where did you go ?<br>I went outside. |
| 2. u kahāā gaeko ?<br>u baahira gaeko.                      | Where did he go ?<br>He went out.                    |
| 3. bhitra aau.<br>timile ke gareko ?<br>ma bhitra aaeko.    | Come in.<br>What did you do ?<br>I came in ?         |
| 4. usle ke gareko ?<br>u bhitra aaeko.                      | What did he do ?<br>He came in.                      |

(e)

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. blyaakborDnira jaanos.<br>tapaalle ke gareko ?<br>ma blyaakborDnira gaeko.                                     | Please go to the black-board.<br>What did you do ?<br>I went to the black-board.                             |
| 2. wahāāle ke gareko ?<br>wahāā blyaakborDnira gaeko.   | What did he do ?<br>He went to the black-board.  |
| 3. blyaakborDmaa tapaalko naam<br>lekhnos.<br>tapaalle ke gareko ?<br>maile blyaakborDmaa<br>aaphno naam lekheko. | Please write your name on<br>the black-board.<br>What did you do ?<br>I wrote my name on the<br>black-board. |

(f)

- |                        |                            |
|------------------------|----------------------------|
| 1. yo kati ho ?<br>ek. | How much is this ?<br>One. |
| 2. yo ni ?<br>dui.     | And this<br>Two.           |

- |                                       |   |
|---------------------------------------|---|
| 3. blyaa <b>borD</b> maa tin lekhnos. | Please write the number '3' on the black-board. |
| tapaalle ke lekheko ?                 | What did you write ?                            |
| maile tin lekheko.                    | I wrote the number '3'.                         |
| 4. wahāāle chaar lekheko ?            | Did he write the number '4' ?                   |
| hoina, tin lekheko.                   | No, he wrote '3'.                               |

(g)

- |   |                            |
|---|----------------------------|
| 1. ti ke hun ?                            | What are those ?           |
| ti kalam hun.                             | They are pens.             |
| 2. tyahāā katiwa <b>Taa</b> kalam chhan?  | How many pens are there ?  |
| tyahāā tinwa <b>Taa</b> kalam chhan.      | There are three pens.      |
| 3. tapaalko kalam kun chaahī ho?          | Which one is your pen ?    |
| mero kalam raato chaahī ho.               | The red one is my pen.     |
| 4. tapaalko kalam khal <b>timaa</b>       | Please put your pen in     |
| raakhnos.                                 | your pocket.               |
| tapaalle ke gareko ?                      | What did you do ?          |
| maile kalam mero khal <b>timaa</b>        | I put my pen in my pocket. |
| raakheko.                                 |                            |
| 5. tapaalle kasko kalam khal <b>timaa</b> | Whose pen did you put      |
| raakheko ?                                | in your pocket ?           |
| maile mero kalam khal <b>timaa</b>        | I put my pen in my pocket. |
| raakheko.                                 |                            |

#### GRAMMAR NOTES

1. 'wa**Taa**' and 'janaa' are classifiers which are used with countable nouns. Countable nouns, as opposed to mass nouns, are those which can be counted. They are used post positionally to the number, but precede the noun in question. As a general rule 'wa**Taa**' is used with things, where as 'janaa' is only used with people.

Forms.

- a) cu**Taa**, dui wa**Taa** or dui**Taa**, tia wa**Taa**, chaar wa**Taa**.
- b) ek janaa, dui janaa, etc.

2. 'nira' – to, near. nera is the variant spelling of nira.
3. 'hun' – is plural of 'ho, while 'hoinan' is the plural negative.
4. 'chhan' – is plural of 'chha' and chhaina is the plural negative.

## 5. Post-Positions.

Note that in Nepali, English preposition equivalents come after the noun and thus are postpositions. For example:-

<b>nepaalmaa</b>	<i>–in Nepal.</i>
<b>blyaakborDmaa</b>	<i>–on the black-board.</i>

6. 'aaphno' combines with the possessive pronouns to emphasize possession, i.e. *my own, his own*, etc, for example–

<b>maile aaphno naam lekheko.</b>	<i>–I wrote my own name.</i>
<b>sitaale aaphno kitaab paDheko.</b>	<i>–Sita read her own book.</i>

7. **chaahI**,– virtually means 'one' in situations asking for an identification. For example –

<b>kun chaahI</b>	<i>–which one ?</i>
<b>yo chaahI</b>	<i>–This one.</i>

8. The respect for seniority, rank and caste position in the Nepalese culture accounts for different forms of the infinitive 'to be' or 'hum'. In part I b when inquiring about one's family member, 'haahunchha' (affirmative) and 'hunnhuuna' (negative) are used in reference to older brothers and sisters while simply 'chha' is used when referring to younger siblings. This more respectful form is also used when one wishes to be courteous.
9. 'timi' one of the three forms of 'you', is also a result of the above mentioned attitude, i.e. 'timi' denotes second person usages for those younger in age, lower in rank, and for lower in caste position. In addition, the verb ending changes, as in Part II, c. The command form 'garnus' changes to 'gara ! This form of 'you' is also used in situations of familiarity, i.e. between friends.

## LESSON 4

### VOCABULARY

aaja	today	kina	why
ani	and then	kinnu	to buy
baaTa	from	ki	or
bajaar	market	klaas	c ass
baje	o'clock (When stating/asking time of an event)	koko	who (plural)
		lekhnu	to write
		najaane	will not go (see note)
belukaa	evening		
bholi	tomorrow	napaDhne	will not read
bholi bihaana	tomorrow morning	naraakhne	will not put
bidaa	holiday	pāāch	five
chaamal	uncooked rice	paune saat	quarter to seven
chini	sugar	pharkanu	to return
daal-bhaat	lentils & cooked rice.	phuTbal	Foot ball
		raksi	home made spirit
das	ten	saaDhe das	half past ten
Deraa	apartment	saat	seven
diūso	day time (afternoon)	saathi	friend
dudh	milk	samma	until, as far as,
holaa	may be, might be probably	sawaa pāāch	up to
		sinemaa	quarter past five
kaphi	coffee	tarkaari	movie, picture show
khaanaa	food, meal	Tep	vegetables.
			tape

### PART I.

#### (a)

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| <p>1. sanchai ?<br/>sanchai chha, tapaallaai ni ?</p> | <p>How are you ?<br/>I'm fine, and you ?</p> |
|---|--|

2. sanchai chha. tapaa! kahāa jaane? I'm fine. Where are you going ?  
mero Deraamaa. To my apartment.
3. tapaa!ko Deraa kahāa chha ? Where is your apartment ?  
mero Deraa kamal pokharimaa It's in Kamal Pokhari.  
chha.
4. tapaa!ko Deraamaa ko ko chhan? Who else are staying with you ?  
ma ra mero saathi. Me and a friend of mine.

(b)

1. tapaa! chiyaa khaane ki kaphi What would you like ? Tea or  
khaane ? coffee ?  
ma kaphi khaane. I'll have coffee.
2. tapaa! ni ? and how about you ?  
ma chiyaa khaane. I'll have tea.
3. kaphimaa chini raakhne ? Should I put sugar in your coffee ?  
raakhne. Yes, put in some, please.
4. dudh ni ? Milk too ?  
naraakhne. No, thanks. Don't put in any.

## PART II.

(a)

1. chiyaa khaane ? Wold you like to have tea. ?  
khaane. I'll have some.
2. tapaa! ni ? And you ?  
ma pani khaane. I'll drink some, too.
3. chiyaamaa chini raakhne ? Do you want sugar in your tea ?  
raakhne. Sure, put some in, please.
4. dudh ni ? Milk too ?  
dudh pani raakhne. Yes, put some milk in, too.



(b)

- |                                    |  |
|------------------------------------|--|
| 1. tapaal pāāch baje kahāā jaane ? | Where are you going at 5 o'clock?        |
| ma aaphno Deraamaa jaane.          | I am going to my place.                  |
| 2. Deraamaa ke garne ?             | What are you going to do there ?         |
| daal bhaat khaane.                 | I'm going to eat rice.                   |
| 3. ani ke garne ?                  | And then what are you going to do?       |
| nepaali Tep sunne.                 | I'll listen to some Nepali tapes.        |
| 4. kati baje sutne ?               | What time are you going to go to sleep ? |
| das baje sutne.                    | I'll go to bed at ten.                   |

(c)

- |                                     |  |
|-------------------------------------|--|
| 1. kahāā jaane ?                    | Where are you going ?                          |
| bajaarmaa jaane.                    | I'm going to the bazar.                        |
| 2. bajaarmaa kina jaane ?           | Why are you going to the bazar?                |
| chaamal, daal ra tarkaari kinna.    | To buy rice, lentils and vegetables.           |
| 3. bajaar baaTa kati baje pharkane? | What time are you coming back from the bazar ? |
| chaar baje holaa.                   | Probably around four.                          |

(d)

- |                                   |  |
|-----------------------------------|--|
| 1. bholi bihaana kati baje UThne? | What time are you going to get up tomorrow morning ? |
| chha baje uThne.                  | I'm going to get up at 6 o'clock.                    |
| 2. klaasmaa kati baje jaane ?     | When will you go to class ?                          |
| klaasmaa saat baje jaane.         | I'll go at seven.                                    |
| 3. khaanaa kati baje khaane ?     | What time are you going to eat ?                     |
| das baje holaa.                   | Probably at ten o'clock.                             |
| 4. ani ke garne ?                 | What will you do then ?                              |
| ani kitaab paDhne.                | And then I'll read a book.                           |

(e)

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. aaja diuSo nepaali paDhne ki<br>na paDhne ?<br>na paDhne.      | Are you going to study any<br>Nepali this afternoon or not ?<br>No, I'm not going to read any. |
| 2. ke garne ta ?<br>nepali lekhne.                                | What are you going to do, then ?<br>I'll write Nepali.   |
| 3. kati baje samma nepaali lekhne?<br><br>sawaa pāāch baje samma. | Up to what time are you going to<br>write Nepali ?<br>Until quarter after five.                |
| 4. ani ke garne ?<br>ani phuTbal khelne.                          | What are you going to do, then ?<br>Then I'll play foot-ball.                                  |

(f)

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. aaja belukaa kahāā jaane ?<br><br>sinemaa herna jaane.               | Where are you going later on this<br>evening ?<br>I'm going to the movie.            |
| 2. tapaal pani jaane ?<br>najaane.                                      | Are you going, too ?<br>No, I'm not going to go.                                     |
| 3. tapaal kahāā jaane ta ?<br>saathiko gharmaa jaane.                   | Where are you going to go then ?<br>I'm going over to my friend's house.             |
| 4. saathiko gharbaaTa kati baje<br>pharkane ?<br>paune saat baje holaa. | What time will you come back<br>from your freind's ?<br>Probably at quarer to seven. |

(g)

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. bholi nepaali paDhne ?<br><br>bholi nepali napaDhne. | Are you going to study Nepali<br>tomorrow ?<br>Tomorrow I'm not going to read<br>any Nepali. |
|---|--|

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 2. kina ?<br>bholi bidaa ho.                                    | Why ?<br>Tomorrow is a holiday.  |
| 3. bidaamaa ke garne ?<br>shaharmaa jaane ra raksi khaane.      | During your day off what are you going to do ?<br>I'm going to go to town and drink raksi. |
| 4. tapaaI pani aaune ?<br>aaune.                                | Do you want to come, too ?<br>Sure, I'll come.   |
| 5. shaharbaaTa kati baje pharkane?<br>saaDhe das baje pharkane. | What time are you coming back from town ?<br>I'll come back at half past ten.              |

#### GRAMMAR NOTES

- Such words as 'jaane' 'khaane', 'paDhne' etc which are short verb forms are commonly used in spoken Nepali. The 'ne' ending is indicative of a future event, where as the 'eko' verb ending refers to a past activity. Study the following examples:

tapaal bholi kaaThmaanDu jaane? Are you going to Kathmandu tomorrow ?

timi chiyaa khaane ki kaphi khaane ? Would you like tea or coffee ?

usle ke paDheko ? What did he read ?

usle nepaali kitaab paDheko. He read a Nepali book.

- 'na' is used as a prefix to the verb to negate the idea.

tapaal bazaar jaane ? Are you going to the bazaar ?  
najaane. No, I'm not.

- ko ko** (lit. *who, who*). Most question words in Nepali are often repeated to indicate plurality.

tapaal ke ke khaane ? What (what different things) do you want to eat ?

4. **'kinna'**- (From **'kinnu'** to buy). This modification of the verb infinitive specifies the purpose of an endeavor.

In this case: *'for the purpose of buying'*

Note that when used in a sentence, the infinitive ending of the verb **'nu'** changes into **'na'**

**hernu** — ma sinemaa herna najaane—I'm not going to the movie.

**sutnu** — ma sutna jaane —I'm going to go to sleep.

5. **'holaa'**— It means, *'probably'*, *'may be'*, *'might be'*, *'possibly'*, *'like'*.

## LESSON 5

### VOCABULARY

asanTol	Asan Tole (a street in Kathmandu)	niuroD	New Road (a street in Kathmandu)
baTTaa	packet	pasal	store, shop
bhayo	(lit. became)	paainchha	is available
chij	cheese, thing	paaldaina	is not available
churoT	cigarettee	phalphul	fruit
hunchha	Yes, ok, sure	phul	egg, flower
jammaa	total	saahuji	store-keeper
linu	to take	sukaa	quarter of a rupee
mahango	expensive	yahāā	here
mohar	half a rupee 50 paisa.		

### PART I

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. namaste.<br>namaste.                            | Hello.<br>Hello.  |
| 2. kahāā jaane ?<br>bajaar jaane.                  | Where are you going ?<br>I'm going to the bazar.                |
| 3. bajaarmaa kina jaane ?<br>tarkaari kinna jaane. | Why are you going to the bazar?<br>I'm going to buy vegetables. |
| 4. ani kahāā jaane ?<br>Deraamaa pharkane.         | Where are you going then ?<br>I'm going to go back to my place. |
| 5. kati baje pharkane ?<br>pāāch baje holaa.       | What time are you heading back ?<br>Probably, at five O'clock.  |

## PART II

### (a)

- |                                    |  |
|------------------------------------|--|
| 1. tapaalko pasalmaaa churoT chha? | Do you have cigarettes in your store ? |
| chha. kati line ?                  | Yes, I have How many would you like ?  |
| 2. ek baTTaako kati ?              | How much is a packet ?                 |
| ek baTTaako paach mohar .          | Two and a half rupees.                 |
| 3. dui baTTa dinos.                | Give me two packets, plase.            |
| linos.                             | Please, take it.                       |

### (b)

- |                                   |                                  |
|-----------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| 1. yahāā suntalaa chha ?          | Do you have oranges ?            |
| chha.                             | Yes, I do.                       |
| 2. ek rupiyāāko kati ?            | How many for a rupee ?           |
| dui waTaa.                        | Two.                             |
| 3. mahango bhayo ?                | They're expensive ?              |
| tinwaTaa dinos.                   | Please give me three for a rupee |
| 4. hunchha. kati rupiyāāko line ? | O.K. How many do you want ?      |
| pāāch rupiyāāko line.             | I'll take five rupees worth.     |
| 5. la, pandhra waTaa linos.       | Here, take fifteen of them.      |

### (c)

- |                                    |                                    |
|------------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| 1. asan Tolmaa phalphul paainchha? | Are fruits available in Asan Tole? |
| paainchha.                         | Yes, they are.                     |
| 2. chij ni ?                       | How about cheese ?                 |
| chij ta paaIdaina.                 | No, cheese is not available.       |

3. *chij kahāā paainchha ta ?*  
*niuroDmaa paainchha.*
4. *ek kiloko kati parchha ?*  
*bis rupiyāā parchha.*

Where is cheese found then ?  
It's found in New road.

How much is a kilo ?  
It costs 20 rupees.

(d)

1. *e saahuji ! phul chha ?*  
*chha. katiwaTaa line ?*
2. *euTaako kati ho ?*  
*tin sukaa.*
3. *chaarwaTaa dinos.*  
*linos.*
4. *jammaa kati bhayo ?*  
*tin rupiyāā.*

Oh shopkeeper! Do you have eggs?  
Yes, I do. How many would you like ?

How much are they a piece ?  
Seventy five paisa.

Give me four, please.  
Here, take them, please.

How much does it come to ?  
Three rupees.

#### GRAMMAR NOTES

1. **'mahango bhayo'** *It's expensive*—(lit. *It became expensive*) is a very commonly used expression, when bargaining.
2. **sukaa** — *a 25 paisa coin.*  
**mohaar** — *a 50 paisa coin.*

Both of these are commonly used in Kathmandu and in the hills. In the Terai you will hear people saying '*chaar aanna*' for *sukaa* and '*aaTh aanaa*' for a *mohar*.

3. **'paainchha'**—This is an example of an impersonal verb. Its form remains the same irrespective of numbers, persons, and genders. The most common verb form is the singular third person of any tense. The impersonal verb forms are very common in Nepali and are often used in places where English prefers to use personal forms.

## Usages

### PRESENT TENSE

#### AFFIRMATIVE

paainchha (is found)  
chaahinchha (is needed)  
suninchha (is heard)  
dekhinchha (is seen)

#### NEGATIVE

paainna, paaIdaina.  
chaahinna, chhaahIdaina.  
suninna, sunidaina.  
dekhinna, dekhidaina.

### PAST TENSE

#### AFFIRMATIVE

paaiyo  
chaahiyo  
suniyo  
dekhiyo

#### NEGATIVE

paaiena  
chaahiena  
suniena  
dekhiena

### FORMATION OF IMPERSONAL VERBS

- a) All transitive verbs can become impersonal by adding the suffix 'i' to the root.

**dekhnu** (to see)

**dinu** (to give)

**garnu** (to do)

**dekhinchha** (It is seen)

**diinchha** (It is given)

**garinchha** (It is done)

4. 'kati parchha' ?— is one of the many ways of asking the price of a commodity.



## LESSON 6.

### VOCABULARY

āāp	mango	paakeT	packet
aliali	a little, a few	paisaa	paisa
chaahldaina	isn't needed	parchha	(it) costs
DaT pen	ball point pen	pardaina	does not cost
dherai	many, a lot of	saaDhe	halt
galDaa	a brand of cigarettes (lit. rhinoceros)	sisaa kalam	pencil
		sisi	bottle
kehi	any, some (thing)	syaaau	apple
khaam	envelope	tibbati	Tibetan
lyaaaidinu	to bring for some one	Thik	O. K., all right.
maatra	only		

### PAR I

1. ma bazaar jaane. I am going to the bazaar.  
tapaallaai kehi chaahinchha ? Do you need anything ?  
chaahinchha. Yes, I do.
2. ke ke chaahinchha ? What do you need ?  
ek baTTaa churoT ra ek I need a packet of cigarettes  
sisi raksī. and a bottle of local liquor.
3. kun churoT ? What brand of cigarette ?  
galDaa. Galda.
4. paisaa dinos. ma lyaaai dinchhu. Give me the money for them  
linos. das rupyiāā chha. please. I'll bring them for you.  
Here's ten rupees.

## PART II

### (a)

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. tapaailaai ke chaahinchha ?<br>malaai syaau chaahinchha.          | What do you need ?<br>I need some apples.  |
| 2. kati line ?<br>chhawaTaa line.                                    | How many do you want ?<br>I'll take six.   |
| 3. chhawaTaako saaDhe chaar<br>rupiyāā parchha.<br>Thik chha, dinos. | It costs four and half rupees<br>for six.<br>That's okay. Please give them to<br>me. |
| 4. linos   | Here, take them please.  |

### (b)

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. tibaati jhola kinne ?<br><br>nakinne.  | Would you like to buy Tibetan<br>bags ?<br>No. I don't want to buy one.   |
| 2. kina ?<br>tapaalko pasalma mahango chha.   | Why not ?<br>They are expensive in your store   |
| 3. mahango chhaina.<br>euTaako baara rupiyāā<br>maatira parchha.<br>das rupiyāāmaa dine ? | No, they are not expensive.<br>They only cost 12 rupees<br>a piece.<br>Will you give me one for ten<br>rupees ? |
| 4. dine, la linos   | O. K., take it please.  |

### (c)

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. yo pasalma sisaakalam<br>paainchha ?<br>paainchha. katiwaTaa line ? | Are pencils available in this store ?<br>Yes. How many do you want ? |
| 2. euTaako kati parchha ?<br>euTaako ek mohar parchha.                 | How much does one cost ?<br>They are 50 paisa each.                  |

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 3. tin waTaa dinos. khaam pani<br>paainchha ?<br>paainchha. | Please give me three. Do you<br>also have envelopes ?<br>Yes, they are available. |
| 4. khaam das waTaa dinos.<br>la, linos                      | Give me ten, please.<br>Here, please take them.                                   |
| 5. jammaa kati bhayo ?<br>dui rupiyāā bhayo.                | How much is it altogether ?<br>Two rupees.  |

(d)

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. amerikaamaa āāp paainchha ?<br>paainchha.                           | Are mangoes available in America ?<br>Yes.                       |
| 2. tyahāā āāp sasto chha ki<br>mahango chha ?<br>ali ali mahango chha. | Are mangoes cheap or expensive<br>there ?<br>A little expensive. |
| 3. euTaako kati parchha ?<br>euTaako dui rupiyāā parchha.              | How much does one cost ?<br>They are two rupees a piece.         |
| 4. yahāā ni ?<br>yahāā tin sukaa parchha.                              | How about here ?<br>It costs 75 paisa here.                      |

(e)

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. tapaaillaii sisaakalam chaahin-<br>chha ?<br>chaahidaina. | Do you need any pencils ?<br>No, I do not need any. |
| 2. Dat pen ni ?<br>DaT pen ta chaahinchha.                   | How about ball-point pens ?<br>Yes, that I need.    |
| 3. linos. masaāga dherai chhan.<br>paisaa linos na ta.       | Take one. I have lots of them.<br>Here is my money. |
| 4. paradaina.  | That's not necessary.                               |

#### GRAMMAR NOTES

1. See lesson 5, Grammar notes ≠ 3, for the use of 'chaahinchha'
2. See lesson 5, Grammar notes ≠ 4, for the use of 'parchha'
3. 'pardaina' — the negative of 'parchha' used here to mean 'not necessary'

## LESSON 7

### VOCABULARY

aaunu	to come	kaam	work
aghi	since, ago	kahile	when
chiTThi	letter	kasari	how
din	day	nau	nine
gaaũ	village	siknu	to learn
haami	we	thaahaa hunu	to know
haptaa	week	tyaspachhi	then (lit. after that)

### PART I

1. tapaal nepaalmaa kahile  
aaeko ?  
dui haptaa bhayo. When did you come to Nepal ?  
Two weeks ago.
2. nepaalmaa kati barsa basne ?  
ma nepaalmaa dui barsa  
basne. How many years will you stay in  
Nepal ?  
I will stay in Nepal for two years.
3. ani ke garne ?  
ahile thaahaa chhaina. What will you do then ?  
I don't know now.

### PART II

(a)

1. tyo ke ho ?  
yo kitaab ho. What's that ?  
It's a book.
2. tyo kasko kitaab ho ?  
yo mero kitaab ho. Whose book is that ?  
It's my book.

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 3. PaDhnos. tapaaī ke gardai<br>hunuhunchha ?<br>ma paDhdai chhu. | Read it please. What are you<br>doing ?<br>I'm reading. |
| 4. wahāā ke gardai hunuhunchha?<br>wahāā paDhdai hunuhunchha.     | What's he (she) doing ?<br>He (she) is reading.         |

(b)

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. blyakborD nira jaanus.<br>tapaaī kahāā jāādai hunuhunchha?<br>ma blyakborD nira jāādai chhu.             | Go to the black-board please.<br>Where are you going ?<br>I'm going to the black-board.           |
| 2. blyakborDmaa tapaaī ko<br>naam lekhnus.<br>tapaaī ke gardai hunuhunchha?<br>ma aaphno naam lekhdai chhu. | Please write your name on the<br>black-board.<br>What are you doing ?<br>I'm writing my own name. |
| 3. tapaaīle ke gareko ?<br>maile aaphno naam lekheko.   | What did you do ?<br>I wrote my name.   |
| 4. wahāāle ke gareko ?<br>wahāāle aaphno naam lekheko.  | What did he do ?<br>He wrote his name.  |

(c)

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. bholi tapaaī kahāā jāādai<br>hunuhunchha ?<br>bholi ma pokharaa jāādai chhu. | Where are you going tomorrow ?<br>I'm going to Pokhara.     |
| 2. kasari jāādai hunuhunchha ?<br>ma basmaa jāādai chhu.                        | How are you going ?<br>I'm going by bus.                    |
| 3. tyahāā kati din basne?<br>tin din basne.                                     | How long will you stay there ?<br>I'll stay for three days. |
| 4. tyaspachhi ke garne ni ?<br>tyaspachhi pharkane.                             | After that what will you do ?<br>Then I'll come back.       |

(d)

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. kaapimaa tapaaiko naam lekhnus.<br>tapaal mero naam lekhdai hunuhunchha ?<br>hoina. | Please write your name in note-book.<br>Are you writing my name ?<br>No, I'm not. |
| 2. kasko naam lekhdai hunuhunchaa ta ?<br>ma aaphno naam lekhdachhu.                   | Whose name are you writing then ?<br>I'm writing my own name.                     |
| 3. wahaa kasko naam lekhdai hunuhunchha ?<br>wahaa aaphno naam lekhdai hunuhunchha.    | Whose name is he writing ?<br>He is writing his name.                             |

(e)

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. timi ke lekhdai chhau ?<br>ma chiTThi lekhdachhu.                           | What are you writing !<br>I'm writing a letter.                       |
| 2. timi kaslaai chiTThi lekhdai chhau ?<br>ma saathilaai chiTThi lekhdai chhu. | Who are you writing to ?<br>I'm writing to my friend.                 |
| 3. timi nepaalimaa chiTThi lekhdai chaau ?<br>hoina, angrejimaa lekhdachhu.    | Are you writing the letter in Nepali ?<br>No, I'm writing in English. |

#### GRAMMR NOTES

The present progressive form is used:

(a) to describe an action which is taking place currently, such as-

- |                            |                         |
|----------------------------|-------------------------|
| ma chiTThi lekhdachhu.     | I'm writing a letter.   |
| uniharu taas kheldaichhan. | They are playing cards. |

- (b) to describe an action that will take place in the future though most commonly used only with the verbs 'go' and 'come'.

ma bholi jāādaichhu.	I'm going tomorrow.
uniharu parsi aādaichhan.	They are coming the day after tomorrow.

### Conjugation of Present Progressive --- 'lekhnu'

ma	lekhdaichhu.	I'm writing.
tā	lekhdaichhas.	you are writing.
u	lekhdaichha.	He's writing.
haami	lekhdaichhā.	we are writing.
timi	lekhdaichhau.	You are writing.
uniharu	lekhdaichhan.	They are writing.
tapaal	lekhdaichhun.	You are writing.

The negative of **ma gardai chhu** is **ma gardai chhaina**. This is heard but not commonly used. But another present Progressive form '**raheko**' has its negative form which is more common. It is given on page 142. **tā** is used by a superior to his greatly inferior such as by a father to his son or in familiar address such as among very close friends.

## LESSON 8

### VOCABULARY

aalu	potato	maasu	meat
bajyo	o'clock	maatra	only
		mahinaa	month
		mineT	minute
bhaasaa	language.	miThaai	sweets
bihaanako khaanaa	morning meal	paDhaaunu	to teach
bolnu	to speak	pheri	again
dekhnu	to see	ra	and
dherai jaso	mostly, usually	sadhaI	always
ghanTaa	hour	salaad	salad
ghaDi	watch	sutnu	to sleep
kahile kaahi	sometimes	uThnu	to get up
khaajaa	snack		
khelnu	to play		

### PART I

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. timro naam ke ho ?<br>mero naam Tim ho.                                 | What's your name ?<br>My name is Tim.   |
| 2. timi kun bhaasaa bolchhau ?<br>ma angreji bolchhu.                      | What language do you speak ?<br>I speak English.                                      |
| 3. ahile timi kun bhaasaa<br>sikdaichhau ?<br>ahile ma nepaali sikdaichhu. | What language are you learning<br>presently ?<br>I'm learning Nepali now.             |
| 4. nepaali kati mahinaa paDh-<br>chhau ?<br>tin mahinaa paDhchhu.          | For how many months will you<br>study Nepali ?<br>I'll study Nepali for three months. |



## PART II

### (a)

1. tapaaI kati baje uThnu hunchha? What time do you usually get up ?  
ma chha baje uThchhu. I get up at 6 o'clock.
2. kati baje sutnuhuncha ni ? And what time do you go to bed ?  
ma das baje sutchhu. I go to bed at ten o'clock.
3. tapaaI saat baje ke garnuhunchha? What do you do at seven o'clock?  
ma saat baje chiyaa ra phul I have tea and eggs at  
khaanchhu. seven o'clock.
4. tapaaI kati baje aphis What time do you go to the  
jaanuhunchha. office ?  
ma aaTh baje aphis jaanchhu. I go to the office at eight o'clock.

### (b)

1. tapaaiko ghar amerikaa ho ? Are you from America ?  
ho. Yes, I am.
2. tapaaI kahaa kaam garnuhun- Where do you work ?  
chha ?  
ma piskormaa kaam garchhu. I work at Peace Corps.
3. ke kaam garnuhunchha ? What kind of work do you do ?  
ma paDhaaachhu. I teach.
4. ke pDhaaunuhunchha ? What do yo teach ?  
angreji paDhaaachhu. I teach English.
5. kahaa ? Where ?  
pokharaako euTaa iskulmaa. At a school which is in Pokhara.

### (c)

1. ahile kati bajyo ? What time is it now ?  
ahile paach bajyo. It's five o'clock.

2. timi sawaa pāāch baje ke  
garchhau ?  
chiyaa khaanchhu.

What are you going to do at  
five fifteen ?  
I'll drink some tea.

3. phuTbal khelna kati baje  
jaanchhau ?  
phuTbal khelna saaDhe pāāch  
baje jaanchhu.

What time are you going to go  
to play foot-ball ?  
I'll go to play foot-ball at five  
thirty.

(d)

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. tapaalko ghaDimaa kati bajyo ?<br>saat bajna bis mineT bāāki chha. | What time is it according to your<br>watch ?<br>It's twenty minutes to seven.     |
| 2. Deraamaa kati baje jaanuhun-<br>chha ?<br>saat baje jaanchhu.      | What time are you going to go to<br>your apartment ?<br>I'll go at seven o'clock. |
| 3. ani ke garnuhunchha ?<br>daal bhaat khaanchhu.                     | What are you going to do then ?<br>I'll eat dinner.                               |
| 4. kati baje sutnuhunchha ?<br>paune das baje sutchhu.                | What time are you going to bed ?<br>I'll go to bed at quarter to ten.             |

(e)

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. tapaaIharu klaasmaa kati baje<br>jaanuhunchha ?<br>saat baje jaanchhaa.  | What time do you go to class ?<br><br>We go at seven o'clock. |
| 2. tapaaIko nepaali klaas<br>kati ghanTaa hunchha ?<br>tin ghanTaa hunchha. | How long is your Nepali class ?<br><br>Three hours long.      |
| 3. khaanaa kati baje khaanuhun-<br>chha ?<br>saaDhe das baje.               | What time do you eat ?<br><br>At ten thirty.                  |

4. ani ke garnuhunchha ?  
pheri nepali paDhchhañ.

What do you do then ?  
We study Nepali again.

(f)

1. amerikaaliharũ bhaat  
khaanchhan ?  
khāadainan.
2. ke khaanchhan ta ?  
maasu ra aalu khaanchhan
3. sadhai maasu khaanchhan ?  
hoina, kahile kahĩ khaadainan.
4. biyar ni ?  
biyar dherai jaso khaanchhan.

Do Americans eat boiled rice ?  
No, they don't.  
What do they eat then ?  
They eat meat and potato.  
Do they always eat meat ?  
No, sometimes they don't.  
How about beer ?  
Yes, they usually drink beer.

(g)

1. tapaai sadhai raksi khaa-  
nũhunchha ?  
khaanna. kahile kahĩ  
maatra khaanchhu.
2. meri ni ?  
kahile pani khāadaina.

Do you always drink raksi ?  
No, I don't. I only drink  
it sometimes.  
How about Mary ?  
She never drinks.

#### GRAMMAR NOTES

1. Conjugation of simple present tense of 'bolnu' – to speak–

##### AFFIRMATIVE.

ma	bolchhu	I speak
tā	bolchhas	You speak
u	bolchha	He speaks
haami	bolchhāũ	We speak
timi	bolchhau	You speak
uniharu	bolchhan	They speak
tapaai	bolũhunchha	You speak

2. kati bajyo  
'kati'

What time is it ?  
how much or how many ?

In the above expression the literal translation is 'how much time has past' ?  
'bajyo' is the past tense of 'bajnu' Strike

sawaa	a quarter past	(fifteen after)
saaDhe	half past	(—thirty)
paune	a quarter to	(fifteen to)

.... bajera .... mineT gayo	It is .... after ....
das bajera pāach mineT gayo	It's 5 minutes after 10.
.... bajna .... mineT bāaki chha	It's ..... to .....
pāach bajna das mineT bāaki chha	It's 10 minutes to 5.

3. Note: Do not confuse 'baje' and 'bajyo'.  
'bajyo' is used in questions and statements like:

kati bajyo ?	What time is it ?
saat bajyo.	It's seven o'clock.

'baje' is used in expressions like:

saat baje.	At seven o'clock.
saaDhe pāach baje.	At five thirty.

4. 'khilli' is one cigarette. There is no English equivalent for this word.

5. 'nai' is an emphatic particle.

ma aaja nai jaanchhu.	I'll definitely go to-day.
-----------------------	----------------------------

aajanai is sometimes contacted to aajai.

## LESSON 9

### VOCABULARY

aba	now	keraa	banana
baalnu	to light	nibhaaunu	to turn off (light)
batti	light	paaunu	to get
bidyaarthi	student	pachchis	twenty-five
chaalis	forty	phohar	dirty
hernu	to look	saphaa	clean
hijo	yesterday	tis	thirty
kaagati	lemon		

### PART I

(a)

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. tapaako naam ke ho ?<br>mero naam Tim ho.                                   | What's your name ?<br>My name is Tim.                           |
| 2. tapaako ghar kahāā ho ?<br>mero ghar amerikaa ho.                           | Where are you from ?<br>I'm from the States.                    |
| 3. tapaaī kun bhaashaa<br>bolnuhunchha ?<br>ma angreji bolchhu.                | What language do you speak ?<br><br>I speak English.            |
| 4. tapaaī ahile kun bhaashaa<br>sikdai hunuhunchha ?<br>ma nepaali sikdaichhu. | What language are you<br>learning now ?<br>I'm learning Nepali. |
| 5. tapaaī kati barsha hunubhayo ?<br>ma bis barsha bhaē.                       | How old are you ?<br>I'm twenty years old.                      |

(b.)

1. wahāā kun bhaashaa bolnuhunchha ? What language does he speak ?  
wahāā angreji bolnuhunchha. He speaks English.
2. wahāā ke kaam garnuhunchha? What does he do ?  
wahāā pis kor swayam sewak hunuhunchha. He is a Peace Corps Volunteer.
3. wahāā kun bhaashaa sikdai hunuhunchha ? What language is he learning ?  
wahāā nepaali sikdai hunuhunchha. He's learning Nepali.
4. wahāā kati barsha hunubhayo ? How old is he ?  
wahāā baais barsha hunubhayo. He is twenty two years old.
5. wahāā kahāā basnuhunchha ? Where does he live ?  
wahāā paaTanmaa basnuhunchha. He lives in Patan.

## PART II

(a.)

1. blyaaak borDnira jaanos. Please go to the black board.  
tapaaī kahāā jaanubhayo ? Where did you go ?  
ma blyaaak borDnira gaē. I went to the black board.
2. blyaaakborDmaa tapaaiko Please write your name on the  
naam lekhnos. black board  
tapaaile ke lekhnubhayo ? What did you write ?  
maile mero naam lekhe. I wrote my name.
3. blyaaak borD saphaa garnos. Please erase (clean) the black board.  
tapaaile ke garnubhayo ? What did you do ?  
maile blyaaakborD saphaa garē. I erased the black board.

4. wahāāle ke garnu bhayo ?  
wahaāle blyaaakborD saphaa  
garnu bhayo.

What did he do ?  
He erased the black board.

(b)

1. kaapimaa pachchis lekhnos.  
tapaalle tis lekhnu bhayo ?  
lekhina.

Please write 25 in your note book.  
Did you write thirty ?  
No, I didn't.

2. kati lekhnu bhayo ta ?  
pachchislekhē.

How much did you write then ?  
I wrote twenty five.

3. wahāāle chaalis lekhnubhayo ?  
ahā, lekhnubhaena.

Did he write forty ?  
No, he didn't.

4. kati lekhnu bhayo ta ?  
pachchis lekhnubhayo.

How much did he write then ?  
He wrote twenty five.

(c)

1. tyo ke ho ?  
yo kaagati ho.

What's that ?  
It's a lemon.

2. khaanus.  
tapaalle ke garnubhayo ?  
maile kaagati khaaē.

Eat it, please.  
What did you do ?  
I ate the lemon.

3. kaagati kasto chha ?  
amilo chha.

How is it ?  
It's sour.

4. aba yo keraa khaanos.  
tapaalle ke khaanubhayo ?  
maile keraa khaaē.

Now eat this banana, please  
What did you eat ?  
I ate the banana.

5. keraa amilo chha ?  
chhaina, guiliyo chha.

Is the banana sour ?  
No, it's not. It is sweet.

## GRAMMAR NOTES

### SIMPLE PAST TENSE-

Until now the **'eko'** form has been emphasized for the past tense. Although this form is very common you should also learn the conjugated forms for each gender.

#### Conjugation of SIMPLE PAST TENSE.

a) Intransitive verb	<b>'to go'</b>	<b>'jaanu'</b>
PRONOUN	AFFIRMATIVE	NEGATIVE
ma	gaẽ	galna
tā	gais	gainas
u	gayo	gaena
haami	gayaũ	gaenaũ
timi	gayau	gaenau
uniharu	gae	gaenan
tapaaĩ	jaanubhayao	jaanubhaena

b) Transitive verb	<b>'to write'</b>	<b>'lekhnũ'</b>
PRONOUN	AFFIRMATIVE	NEGATIVE
maile	lekhe	lekhina
talle	lekhis	lekhinas
usle	lekhyo	lekhena
haamile	lekhyau	lekhenaũ
timile	lekhyau	lekhenau
uniharule	lekhe	lekhenan
tapaaĩle	lekhnubhayo	lekhnubhaena

Note- the suffix **'le'** is used for all persons when they are the subject of transitive verbs in the simple past tense.



- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 2. kati ghanTaa khelnubhayo ?<br>dui ghanTaa khelē.                        | How long did you play ?<br>I played for two hours.  |
| 3. tapaaillaai thakaai laagyo ki<br>laagena ?<br>asaadhyai thakaai laagyo. | Did you get tired or not ?<br><br>I got very tired. |
| 4. ke garnu bhayo ta ?<br>aaraam garē.                                     | What did you do then ?<br>I rested.                 |

(d.)

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. hijo diuso aaunubhaena ni.<br>kin ?<br>aaina. alchhi laagyo. | You didn't come yesterday.<br>Why ?<br>No, I didn't. I felt lazy. |
| 2. dinbhari ke garnu bhayo ni ?<br>gharmai basē.                | What did you do all day ?<br>I stayed at home.                    |
| 3. beluki ni ?<br>beluki raamkāā gaē.                           | How about in the evening ?<br>I went to Ram's in the evening.     |
| 4. raamkāā ke garnu bhayo ?<br>raksi khaayaū, taas khelyaū.     | What did you do at Ram's ?<br>We drank raksi and played cards.    |
| 5. tapallaai raksi laagyo<br>ki laagena ?<br>ekdam laagyo.      | Did you get durnk or did you<br>stay sober ?<br>I got very drunk. |

### COMPREHENSION

ramesh koThaamaa eklai chha. u nepaali paDhdai chha. usko aamaa koThaamaa aaunu bhayo ra bhannubhayo, “ramesh ! timi-laai bhok laagyo holaa. khaajaa khaana aau. rotTi chiyaar ba biskuT khaau.” rameshle bhanyo, “malaai bhok laageko chhaina, aamaa. tara malaai tirkhaa laageko chha. malaai ek gilaas paani dinos”. aamaale rameshlaai ek gilaas paani dinu bhayo. ani rameshle bhanyo, “aaja

ghoDe jaatraa ho. TūDikhelmaa dhumdhaam ramaailo hunchha.  
ma pani herna jaanchhu.”

### QUESTIONS—

1. ramesh koThaamaa saathisāga chha ?
2. u ke gardai chha ?
3. rameshko aamaale ke bhannubhayō ?
4. rameshlaai bhok laageho chha ?
5. rameshlaai tirkhaa laageko chha ki chhaina ?
6. rameshle ke bhanyo ?
7. aaja diūso ramesh kahāā jaancha ?
8. kina ?

### GRAMMAR NOTES

1. ‘ghoDe jaatraa’ is a festival of horse-racing observed only in the Kathmandu valley.
2. ‘kattiko ramaailo’— *how enjoyable, how pleasant, how nice*
3. Idiomatic usage of ‘laagyo’. This form is taken from the infinitive ‘laagou’ and in essence is used to describe *feelings, sensations, observations or effects*.
4. When the subject is a pronoun or the name of a person in a sentence with ‘laagyo’ used as described in no. 5 above, ‘laai’ is added to it e.g. ‘ma’ becomes ‘malaai’ ‘Dev’ becomes ‘Devlaai’. The verb form is constant throughout. Note the contexts in which it is used:

malaai bhok laagyo.  
uslaai tirkhaa laagyo.  
uniharulaai nidraa laagyo.  
timilaai rughaa laagyo.  
ghaam laagyo.  
baadal laagyo.  
malaai ringaTaa laagyo.  
haamilai jaaDo laagyo.  
timilaai thakaai laagyo.

I’m hungry.  
He’s thirsty.  
They are sleepy.  
You have a cold.  
The sun is out.  
It’s cloudy.  
I feel dizzy.  
We’re cold.  
You’re tired.

maalaai garmi laagyo.  
haawaa laagyo.

I'm hot.  
The wind is blowing.  
(It's windy)

malaai paTyaar laagyo.

I'm bored.

The negative is **laageko chhaina** formed by 'eko chhaina' to the verb stem 'laag'  
example.

malaai tirkhaa laageko chhaina. I'm not thirsty.

## LESSON 11

### VOCABULARY

aaitabaar	sunday	parsi	day after tomorrow
aaune	comming, next (used as an adjective)	paune	quarter to
		roTi	bread
as	day before	shanibaar	Saturday
	yesterday	sombaar	Monday
baar	day	sorha	Sixteen
bihibaar	Thursday	sukrabaar	Friday
budhabaar	Wednesday	taarikh	date (in reference to English solar calendar)
gaeko	gone, last (used as an adjective)	terha	thirteen
	date (in reference to Nepali lunar calendar)	thië	was (first person)
gate		thiyo	was (third person and/or impersonal)
koThaa	room		
kyaalenDar	calendar		
meraa	mine (plural)		
mangalbaar	Tuesday		

### PART I

(a)

- |                      |                          |
|----------------------|--------------------------|
| 1. tyo ke ho ?       | What's that ?            |
| tyo kyaalenDar ho.   | It's a calendar.         |
| 2. aaja ke baar ho ? | What day is it to-day ?  |
| aaja sombaar ho ?    | To-day is Monday.        |
| 3. hiyo ke baar ho ? | What day was yesterday ? |
| hiyo aaitabaar ho.   | Yesterday was Sunday.    |

4. bholi ke baar ho ?  
bholi mangalbaar ho.

What is it tomorrow ?  
Tomorrow is Tuesday.

5. asti ke baar ho ?  
asti shanibaar ho.

What was the day before yesterday?  
The day before yesterday was Saturday.

6. parsi ke baar ho ?  
parsi budha baar ho.

What's day after tomorrow ?  
The day after tomorrow is Wednesday.

(b)

1. aaja ke baar ho ?  
aaja aaitabaar ho.

What day is it today ?  
To-day is Sunday.

2. aaja bihaana tapaa! kati  
baje uThnubhayo ?  
saat baje uThē.

What time did you get up this morning ?  
I got up at seven.

3. aaja bihaana u kati baje uThyo?  
u saat baje uThyo.

What time did he get up this morning ?  
He got up at seven.

4. aaja bihaana tapaa! ke  
khaanu bhayo ?  
maile chiyaa ra roTi khaaē.

What did you eat this morning ?  
I had tea and bread.

## PART II

(a)

1. Dhokaa kholnos, bab.  
jim, bab ke gardaichha ?  
u Dhokaa kholdaichha.

Bob ! Please open the door.  
Jim ! What's Bob doing ?  
He's opening the door.

2. bab ! tapaa! ke garnu bhayo ?  
maile Dhokaa kholē.

Bob ! What did you do ?  
I opened the door.

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 3. tapaaile jhyaal kholnubhayo?<br>hoina, maile jhyaal kholina. | Did you open the window ?<br>No, I didn't open the window. |
| 4. wahāāle jhyaal kholnubhayo?<br>ahā, kholnubhaena.            | Did he open the window.<br>No, he didn't.                  |
| 5. ke kholnubhayo ta ?<br>Dhokaa kholnubhayo.                   | What did he open then ?<br>He opened the door.             |

(b)

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. tapaaiko ghar gaaūmaa ho<br>ki shaharmaa ?<br>shaharmaa.                | Is your house in the village or in<br>town ?<br>In town.        |
| 2. tapaaiko shaharko naam ke ho?<br>mero shaharko naam Devis ho.           | What's the name of your town ?<br>The name of my town is Davis. |
| 3. tapaaiko shahar saphaa chha<br>ki phohar chha ?<br>saphaa chha.         | Is your town clean or dirty ?<br>It's clean.                    |
| 4. tapaaiko shahar Thulo chha ki<br>saano chha ?<br>saano chha.            | Is your town big or small ?<br>It's small.                      |
| 5. tapaaiko shaharmaa kati<br>maanchhe baschhan ?<br>andaaji chaar hajaar. | How many people live in your<br>town ?<br>About four thousand.  |

(c)

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. bab ra Tim ! paDhnos.<br>tapaaiharuru ke gardai hunu-<br>hunchha ?<br>haamiharuru paDhdaichhaa. | Bob and Tim ! Please read.<br>What are you doing ?<br>We're reading. |
|--|--|

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 2. uniharu ke gardaichhan ?<br>uniharu paDhdaichhan.   | What are they doing ?<br>They are reading.  |
| 3. uniharu kasko kitaab paDh-<br>daichhan ?<br>uniharu aaphno aaphno kitaab<br>paDhadai chhan. | Whose book are they reading ?<br>They are reading their own books.                            |
| 4. kitaab Tebulmaa raakhnos.<br>uniharule ke gare ?<br>uniharule kitaab Tebulmaa<br>raakhe.    | Put the books on the table, please.<br>What did they do ?<br>They put the books on the table. |
| 5. ahile kitaabharu kahaa chhan ?<br>ahile kitaabharu Tebulmaa<br>chhan.                       | Where are the books now ?<br>The books are on the table now.                                  |

(d)

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. yo ke ho ?<br>yo koThaa ho.   | What's this ?<br>This is a room.  |
| 2. yo sutne koThaa ho ki paDhne?<br><br>yo paDhne koThaa ho.                           | Is this a bed room or a reading<br>room ?<br>It's a reading room.                         |
| 3. yo kasko koThaa ho ?<br>yo haamro koThaa ho.  | Whose room is this ?<br>This is our room.   |
| 4. yo koThaa saphaa chha ki<br>phohor chha ?<br>yo koThaa saphaa chha.                 | Is this room dirty or clean ?<br>This room is clean.                                      |
| 5. yo koThaamaa katiwaTaa<br>kursi chhan ?<br>yo koThaamaa terha waTaa<br>kursi chhan. | How many chairs are there in this<br>room ?<br>There are thirteen chairs in this<br>room. |
| 6. yo koThaamaa ahile kati janaa<br>maanchhe chhan ?<br>das janaa chhan.               | How many people are there in<br>this room now ?<br>There are ten.                         |

1. yo kun mahinaa ho ?  
yo kaattik mahinaa ho.
2. aaja kati gate ho ?  
aaja das gate ho.
3. gaeko mahinaa tapaai kahaa  
hunuhunthyo ?  
ma amerikaamaa thië.
4. dui mahinaa aghi u kahaa  
thiyo ?  
dui mahinaa aghi u  
amerikaamaa thiyo.

What month is this ?  
This is the month of Kattik.

What's the date to-day ?  
To-day is the tenth.

Where were you last month ?  
I was in the States.

Where was he two months ago ?  
He was in the States two months ago.

(f)

1. yo kun mahinaa ho ?  
yo sepTembar ho.
2. aaja kati taarikh ho ?  
aaja pandhra taarikh ho.
3. DeDh mahinaa aghi tapaai  
nepaalmaa hunuhunthyo ?  
thiina.
4. kahaa hunuhunthyo ta ?  
amerikaamaa thië
5. DeDh mahinaa aghi u  
nepaalmaa thiyo ?  
thiina.
6. kahaa thiyo ta ?  
u amerikaamaa thiyo.

What month is this ?  
This is September.

What is the date to-day ?  
To-day is the fifteenth.

Were you in Nepal a month and  
half ago ?  
No, I wasn't

Where were you then ?  
I was in the States.

Was he in Nepal a month and  
half ago ?  
No, he wasn't.

Where was he then ?  
He was in the States.



## COMPREHENSION

aaja shanibaar ho. shyaam aaja iskul jaadaina. chhuTTi chha. u bihaana aaTh baje uThyo. usle chiyaa, roTi ra euTaa phul khaayo ani u phalphul ra tarkaari kinna bajaarmaa gayo. u bajaarmaa hiDera gaena, saaikalmaa gayo.

### QUESTIONS—

1. aja ke baar ho ?
2. shyaam aaja iskul jaanchha ?
3. kina ?
4. u bihaana kati baje uThyo ?
5. usle ke ke khaayo ?
6. ani u kahaa gayo ?
7. kina ?
8. u bajaarmaa hiDera gayo ?
9. kema gayo ta ?

### GRAMMAR NOTES

#### 1. Days of the week.

aaitabaar	Sunday
sombaar	Monday
mangalbaar	Tuesday
budhabaar	Wednesday
bihibaar	Thursday
shukrabaar	Friday
shanibaar	Saturday

2. Dropping the 'u' from the infinitive verb root and adding 'e' does not only result in the informal future Tense so common in conversational Nepali, but also in the common formation of descriptive adjective e. g. **-sutne koThaa, paDhne kitaab** etc.

**Examples:**

ROOT	PARTICIPLE		NOUN	TRANSLATION
khaanu	khaane	+	kuraa	things to eat
jaanu	jaane	+	maanchhe	the man who is going
lekhnu	lekhne	+	kalam	writing pen
siknu	sikne	+	kitaab	learning book.

## LESSON 12

### VOCABULARY

āākhāa	eye	kapāal	hair (of the head)
aglaa (aglo)	tall	khairo	brown
charaa	bird	khutTaa	leg
chhoTo	short (as opposed to long)	laamo	long
daayāā	right (as opposed to left)	sabai	all
gaai	cow	Taauko	head
hocho	short (as opposed to tall)		

### PART I

1. tapaaī neapaal aaeko kati bhayo ?  
tin haptāa bhayo. How long have you been in Nepal ?  
it's been three weeks.
2. tapaaī aaja bholi ke gardai hunuhunchha ?  
ma aajabhōli nepaali sikdai chhu. What are you doing these days ?  
I'm learning Nepali these days
3. tapaaī eklai sikdai hunu hunchha ?  
hoina, mero saathi pani sikdai chha. Are you learning on your own ?  
No, my friend is also learning.
4. tapaaīko saathi pani amerikaali ho ?  
ho. Is your friend also an American ?  
Yes, he is.

## PART II

### (a)

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. tyo ke ho ?<br>yo mero Taauko ho.                                     | What is that ?<br>This is my head.                     |
| 2. tyo ke ho ni ?<br>yo mero kapaal ho.                                  | What about that ?<br>This is my hair.                  |
| 3. tapaaiko kapaal kaalo chha<br>ki khairo ?<br>mero kapaal khairo chha. | Is your hair black or brown ?<br><br>My hair is brown. |
| 4. tapaaiko kapaal laamo chha<br>ki chhoTo ?<br>mero kapaal laamo chha.  | Is your hair long or short ?<br><br>My hair is long.   |

### (b)

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. tyo ke ho ?<br>yo aakhaa ho.  | What is that ?<br>This is an eye.                                       |
| 2. tapaaiko katiwaTaa aakhaa<br>chhan ?<br>mero duiwaTaa aakhaa chhan.                     | How many eyes do you have ?<br><br>I have two eyes.                     |
| 3. tapaaiko daayaa aakhaa chhunos.<br>tapaaile ke garnubhayo ?<br>maile mero aakhaa chhoẽ. | Touch your right eye, please.<br>What did you do ?<br>I touched my eye. |
| 4. kun chaahi aakhaa chhunubhayo?<br>daayaa aakhaa chhoẽ.                                  | Which eye did you touch ?<br>I touched my right eye.                    |

### (c)

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. maanchheko katiwaTaa<br>khuTTaa hunchhan ?<br>duiwaTaa. | How many feet does a man have ?<br><br>Two. |
|--|---|

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 2. gaaiko katiwaTaa khuTTaa hunchhan ni ?<br>chaarwaTaa hunchhan. | How many feet does a cow have?<br>It has four feet.  |
| 3. charaako pani chaarwatTaa khuTTaa hunchhan ?<br>hūdianan.      | Does a bird also have four feet ?<br>No, it doesn't. |
| 4. katiwaTaa hunchhan ta ?<br>duiwaTaa maatra.                    | How many feet does it have then ?<br>Only two.       |

(d)

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. sabai amerikaaliharū aglaa hunchhan ?<br>hūdāinan.                 | Are all Americans tall ?<br>No, they aren't. |
| 2. tapaaiko baa aglo hunuhunchha?<br>hunuhunchha.                     | Is your father tall ?<br>Yes, he is.         |
| 3. tapaaiko aamaa ni ?<br>wahāā ta hocho hunuhunchha.                 | How about your mother ?<br>She is short.     |
| 4. tapaaī kati aglo hunuhunchha ?<br>ma pāāch phiT eghaarā inch chuu. | How tall are you ?<br>I'm 5 ft. 11 inches.   |

(e)

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. tapaaiko āākhāa banda garnos.<br>tapaaile ke garnubhayo ?<br>maile āākhāa banda garē. | Please close your eyes.<br>What did you do ?<br>I closed my eyes. |
| 2. tapaaiko āākhāa khulaa chhan?<br>chhainan.  | Are your eyes open?<br>No, they are not.                          |
| 3. āākhāa kholnos.<br>tapaaile ke garnubhayo ?<br>maile āākhāa kholē.                    | Open your eyes, please.<br>What did you do ?<br>I opened my eyes. |

4. wahāākaa āākhāa khulaa  
chhan ki banda chhan ?  
khullaa chhan.

Are his eyes open or closed ?

They are open.

## GRAMMAR NOTES

1. 'chhu' is the present tense first person, singular form of the verb 'to be' **hunu** I.  
It is conjugated as follows-

PRONOUNS	AFFIRMATIVE	NEGATIVE
ma	chhu	chhaina
tā	chhas	chainas
u	chha	chhaina
haami	chhaū	chhainaū
timi	chhau	chhainau
uniharu	chhan	chhainan
tapaaI	hunuhunchha	hunuhunna

2. Note the difference:

I	am	here	—	ma yahāā chhu.
I	am	Ram	—	ma raam hū.

3. 'chha' and 'hunchha'—

In the sentence 'usko euTaa Taauko chha' (*He has one head*), 'chha' is used to express the idea of possession or *to have*. 'hunchha' in the sentence 'charaako duiTaa khuTTaa hunchha' (*Birds have two legs*) is used in the same way. However, the difference is that 'chha' is used when stating specifics whereas 'hunchha' is used for making generalization. Study the following examples.

Jim aglo chha.

Jim (specific person) is tall.

amerikaaliharū aglaa hunchhan. Americans (in general) are tall.

## LESSON 13

### VOCABULARY

baneko	made	galaichhaa	carpet
barsha	year	kaarkhaanaa	factory
bihaa	wedding	kunni	don't know
	marriage	pariwaar	family
chhoraa	son	saya	hundred
chhori	daughter		

### PART I

(a)

1. tapaalko pariwaarmaa kati janaa chhan ?  
pāāch janaa. How many people are there in your family ?  
Five.
2. ko ko ?  
baa, aamaa, bhaai, bahini ra ma. Who are they ?  
Father, mother, younger brother, younger sister, and myself.
3. tapaalko baa ke kaam garnuhunchha ?  
kalejmaa paDhaaunu hunchha. What does your father do ?  
He teaches in a college.
4. tapaalko bhaai ke garchha ni ?  
iskulmaa paDhchha. What does your younger brother do ?  
He goes to school.
5. bahini ni ?  
u pani iskulmaa paDhchha. How about your younger sister ?  
She also goes to school.

(b)

1. timro daai hunuhunchha ? Do you have an elder brother ?  
hunuhunchha. Yes, I do.
2. wahāā kahāā hunuhunchha ? Where is he ?  
wahāā Devismaa hunuhunchha. He is in Davis.
3. wahāā ke kaam garnu- What does he do ?  
hunchha ?  
wahāā kaarkhaanaamaa kaam He works in a factory.  
garnu hunchha.
4. wahāā kati barsha hunu bhayo? How old is he ?  
wahāā paltis barsha hunubhayo He is thirty five years old.
5. wahāāko bihaa bhayo ? Is he married ?  
bhayo. Yes, he is.
6. chhoraa chhori chhan ki Does he have any children ?  
chaainan ?  
chhan. Yes, he does.
7. katijanaa chhan ? How may does he have ?  
ekjanaa chhori ra duijanaa One daughter and two sons.  
chhoraa.

## PART II

(a)

1. yo sutne koThaa ho ki paDhne? Is this a bed room or a reading  
room ?  
sutne. It's a bed-room.
2. yo koThaamaa kati janaa How many people sleep in this  
sutchhan ? room ?  
duijanaa sutchhan Two people sleep in this room.



3. tapaal pani yo koThaamaa  
sutnuhunchha ?  
sutdina.
4. bill sutchha ta ?  
u pani sutdaina.
5. ko sutchha ta ?  
Tam ra maaik.

Do you also sleep in this room ?

No, I don't.

Does Bill sleep here, then ?

No, he doesn't sleep here either.

Who sleeps here, then

Tom and Mike.

(b)

1. tapaalko galaichha nayaa ho  
ki puraano ?  
puraano.
2. kahaa baneko ?  
solukhumbumaa.
3. tapaaile kahile kinnu bhayo ?  
tin barsha bhayo.  
kati liyo ?  
chaar saya.

Is your carpet new or old ?

It's old.

Where was it made ?

In Solukhumbu.

When did you buy it ?

Three years ago.

How much did you pay for it ?

Four hundred.

(c)

1. yo chij kahaa baneko ho ?  
jirimaa.
2. yo keko dudhbaaTa baneko  
ho ?  
chauri gaaiko dudhbaaTa.
3. yasto chij kaaThmaanDumaa  
kahaa paainchha ?  
niuroDmaa.
4. ek kiloko kati parchha?  
kunni, malaai thaahaa chhaina.

Where was this cheese made ?

In Jiri.

What kind of milk is it made  
from ?

It's made from yak's milk.

Where can you get this kind of  
cheese in Kathmandu ?

In New Road.

How much does a k.g. cost ?

I don't know.

1. a) **‘tapeaĩ kati barsha hunubhayo ?’**—(lit. *How many years did you become ?*) is one of the ways of asking someone’s age. The verb is conjugated according to the pronoun in the subject. For examples—

u kati barsha bhayo ?	How old is he ?
timi kati barsha bhayau ?	How old are you ?
ma kati barsha bhaē ?	How old am I ?

b) **‘taapaaĩko umer kati bhayo?’** is another common way of asking the same question. The verb **‘bhayo’** in this sentence is not conjugated and therefore remains the same irrespective of the pronoun because the subject is **‘umer’** not the pronoun.

2. **‘wahāāko bihaa bhayo ?’** *Is he married ?*

As in (d) above, the verb **‘bhayo’** is not conjugated regardless of the pronoun—

mero bihaa bhayo.	(neg. mero bihaa bhaeko chhaina)
usko bihaa bhayo.	(neg. usko bihaa bhaeko chaina)
timro bihaa bhayo.	(neg. timro bihaa bhaeko chaaina)

3. **‘sutne ko lhaa’** **‘sutne’** in this expression is an infinitival participle used as a descriptive adjective. This is very common in Nepali.

khaanekuraa	food stuffs	(lit. eating things)
kaamgarne maanche	worker	(lit. working man)
bokne maanchhe	porter	(lit. carrying man)

4. **kati liyo ?** (lit. *How much did (he) take?*) is one of the ways of asking *‘How much did it cost’*

Here are some of the other equally common ways of asking the same question—

kati paryo ?	(lit-How much did it fall ?)
kati dinu bhayo ?	(lit-How much did you give ?)
kati tirnu bhayo ?	(lit-How much did you pay ?)
kati haalnu bhayo ?	(lit-How much did you put?)

## LESSON 14

### VOCABULARY

andaaji	approximately, about	kahilepani khel	never game
dubai	both	man laagnu	to want
ekdam	very much (emphatic)	man parnu	to like
himaal	mountain(with snow)	taal	flake
jaannu	to know	tyatikaa	that much,
jhanDai	almost, not quite		as much as that

### PART I

1. tapaaI nepaalmaa aaeko kati bhayo ?  
jhanDai dui mahinaa bhayo.  
How long have you been in Nepal ?  
It's been almost two months.
2. tapaaI kasari aaunubhayo ?  
hawaaijahaajmaa aaẽ.  
How did you come ?  
I came by plane.
3. tapaaIko ghar dekhi yahãã samma aauna kati Dalar laagchha ?  
andaaji nau saya Dalar.  
How much does it cost to come here from your home ?  
It costs bout nine hundred dollars.
4. tapaaIlaai tyatikaa paisaa kasle diyo ?  
mero aphisle.  
Who gave you that much money ?  
My office.
5. tapaaI kun aphismaa kaam garnu hunchha ?  
ma piskor aphismaa kaam garchhu.  
At which office do you work ?  
I work at the Peace Corps office.

## PART II

### (a)

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. tapaai pokharaamaa jaanu bhayo ?<br>ma pokharaamaa gaē.   | Did you go to Pohhara ?<br>Yes, I went to Pohhara.                    |
| 2. kasari jaanu bhayo ?<br>hawaaijahaajmaa gaē.              | How did you go ?<br>I went by plane.                                  |
| 3. tapaailaai pokharaa man paryo?<br>ho, dherai man paryo.   | Did you like Pokhara?<br>Yes, I liked it very much.                   |
| 4. pokharaamaa ke ke man paryo?<br>himaal ra taal man paryo. | What did you like in Pokhara ?<br>I liked the mountains and the lake. |

### (b)

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. timilaai sabbhandaa kun khel man parchha ?<br>malaai phuTbal man parchha. | Which game do you like the best ?<br>I like soccer (foot-baall). |
| 2. aru ke man parchha ?<br>baaskeTabal pani man parcha.                      | What else do you like ?<br>I also like basketball.               |
| 3. Tennis ni ?<br>Tennis man pardaina.                                       | How about Tennis ?<br>I don't like Tennis.                       |
| 4. kina ?<br>kinabhane ma Tennis khelna jaandina.                            | Why ?<br>Because I don't know how to play Tennis.                |

### (c)

- |   |                                  |
|---|----------------------------------|
| 1. timilaai biyar man parchha ?<br>man parchha. | Do you like beer ?<br>Yes, I do. |
|---|----------------------------------|

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 2. raksi ni ?<br>raksi ta man pardaina.   | How about home-made liquor ?<br>I don't like it.                             |
| 3. timi biyar sadhai khaanchhau?<br>ahā khanna, kahile kaahi<br>khaanchhu.                    | Do you always drink beer ?<br>I don't drink it always. I drink<br>sometimes. |
| 4. raksi ni ?<br>raksi ta kahilepani khaanna.   | How about raksi ?<br>I never drink raksi.                                    |
| 5. tapaaiko saathilaa raski man<br>parchha ki biyar man parchha?<br>uslaai dubai man parchha. | What does your friend like? Raksi<br>or beer ?<br>He likes both.             |

(d)

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. hijo tapaaillaai ke khaana man<br>laagyo ?<br>hijo malaai momo khaana man<br>laagyo . | What did you feel like eating<br>yesterday ?<br>I felt like eating momos yester-<br>day. |
| 2. tapaaI momo khaana jaanu<br>bhayo ta ?<br>ho, gaē.                                    | Did you go and eat momos then ?<br><br>Yes, I did.                                       |
| 3. momo khaana tapaaI kahāa<br>jauu bhayo ?<br>om resTurāāmaa gaē.                       | Where did you go to eat momos ?<br><br>I went to Om Restaurant.                          |
| 4. tyahāa momo kasto laagyo ?<br>miTho laagyo.   | How did you like the momos there?<br>I liked it.   |
| 5. aru ke ke khaanubhayo ?<br>aru kehi pari khaaina.                                     | What else did you have ?<br>That was all. I had nothing else.                            |

(e)

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. hijo diiso ke garnubhayo ?<br><br>hindi sinemaa herna gaē. | What did you do yesterday after-<br>noon ?<br>I went to see a Hindi movie ? |
|---|---|

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 2. kun sinemaa hernubhayo ?<br>haathi meraa saathi.                      | Which movie did you see ?<br>Hathi mera Sathi.                  |
| 3. man paryo ta ?<br>ekdam man paryo.                                    | Did you like it ?<br>I liked it very much.                      |
| 4. beluki khaanaa baahira<br>khaanu bhayo ki gharmaa ?<br>baahira khaaē. | Did you eat out or at home<br>yesterday evening ?<br>I ate out. |
| 5. kina ni ?<br>hijo jaapaani khaanaa khaana<br>man laagyo.              | Why ?<br>I wanted to have japanese food<br>yesterday.           |
| 6. kasto laagyo ta ?<br>tyattiko man parena.                             | How did you like it ?<br>I didn't like it that much.            |

(f)

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. timi hijo kina klaasmaa aaenau?<br>malaai nepaali paDhna man<br>laagena. | Yesterday why didn't you come<br>to class ?<br>I didn't feel like learning Nepali. |
| 2. kina ?<br>kinabhane malaai alchhi<br>laageko thiyo .                     | Why not ?<br>Because I felt lazy   |
| 3. ahile paDhna man laageko<br>chha ta ?<br>ahile ta man laageko chha.      | Do you feel like having class now?<br>Yes, I feel like it.                         |
| 4. kati ghanTaa samaa paDchhau?<br>dui ghanTaa samma paDhchhu<br>holaa.     | How many hours are you going<br>to study.<br>For two hours probably.               |

#### GRAMMAR NOTES.

1. 'man parnu' is another impersonal verb.  
The subject of a sentence with 'man parnu' always takes 'laai'.

### Examples.

malaai raksi man pardaina.	I don't like raksi.
mero baalaai daal bhaat	My father likes daal-bhaat.
man parchha.	
timilaai ke man parchha ?	What do you like ?

The personal form of 'man parnu' is 'man paraaunu'. 'man paraannu' also means 'to like' but this form is conjugated according to the pronouns.

### For Example

ma suntalaa man paraaũchhu.	I like oranges.
u suntalaa man paraauchha.	He likes oranges.

Note that 'laai' is not used in the above examples.

**Note:** The impersonal and personal forms of 'man parnu' can be used interchangeably depending on the speaker's preference. Generally though, the impersonal form is more frequently heard.

2. **man laagnu'** is similar to 'man parnu' and therefore the subject again requires 'laai'

## LESSON 15

### VOCABULARY

belaayet	Britain	saathi	friend
gaaũ	village	shahar	city
hũ	am	sanga	with
kaam garnu	to work	sawyam sewak	volunteer

### PART I

1. tapaalko ghar kahāā ho ?      Where are you from ?  
amerikaa.      America.
2. tapaaĩ nepaalmaa aaeko kati      How long has it been since you  
bhayo ?      came to Nepal ?  
ma nepaalmaa aaeko tin haptaa      It has been three weeks.  
bhayo.
3. yahāā ke kaam garnu hunchha ?      What do you do here ?  
ma piskor sawyam sewak hũ.      I am a Peace Corps volunteer.
4. tapaaĩ yahāā kati basnuhunchha ?      How long will you stay here ?  
ma dui barsha baschhu.      I'll stay here for two years.
5. gaaũmaa basnu hunchha ki      Are you going to live in a village  
shaharmaa ?      or in a city ?  
gaaũmaa.      In a village

### PART II

(a)

1. tapaaĩsanga kitaab chhan ?      Do you have any books with you ?  
masanga kitaab chhan.      Yes, I've books with me.



- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 2. tapaalsanga katiwaTaa kitaab chhan ?<br>masanga duiTaa kitaab chhan. | How many do you have ?<br>I have two books.       |
| 3. tapaalsanga kalam chha ki chhaina ?<br>masanga kalam chha.           | Do you have a pen with you or not ?<br>Yes, I do. |
| 4. katiwaTaa ?<br>euTaa maatra.   | How many ?<br>Only one.                           |

(b)

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. tapaaiko moTar chha ?<br>mero moTar chhaina.        | Do you have a car ?<br>No, I don't have a car.  |
| 2. taapaaI kasari aphis jaanuhun-chha ?<br>saaikalmaa. | How do you go to the office ?<br>On a bicycle.  |
| 3. tapaaiko saaikal kahãã baneko ?<br>inDiyaamaa.      | Where was your bicycle made ?<br>In India.      |
| 4. kati liyo ?<br>saat saya rupiyãã.                   | How much did it cost ?<br>Seven hundred rupees. |

(c)

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. tapaalsanga ghaDi chha ?<br>masanga ghaDi chha.                      | Do you have a watch ?<br>Yes, I have a watch.              |
| 2. tapaaiko ghaDi kahãã baneko ho ?<br>mero ghaDi jaapaanmaa baneko ho. | Where was your watch made ?<br>My watch was made in Japan. |
| 3. tyo ghaDiko kati parchha ?<br>tis Dalar parchha                      | How much does that watch cost ?<br>It cost thirty dollars. |

4. tapaale tyo ghaDi kahaa  
kinnubhayo ?  
hangkangmaa kinē.

Where did you buy that watch ?  
I bought my watch in Hong-kong.

(d)

1. timro Deraa kahaa chha ?  
paaTanmaa.

Where is your place ?  
It's in Patan.

2. timisanga ko ko baschhan ?  
masanga mero duijanaa saathi  
baschhan.

Who else lives with you ?  
Two friends of mine live there  
With me.

3. uniharuko ghar kahaa ho ni ?  
ek janaako belaaet ra ek  
janaako amerika ho.

Where are they from ?  
One is from Britain and the  
other one is from America.

#### GRAMMAR NOTES

1. 'sanga and ko' both express the idea of possession or 'to have'. However, there is distinct difference between them in common usage. For example.

- a) 'ma sanga chha' means 'I have with me,' in my possession at the moment,  
masanga churoT chha. - I have cigarettes with me now. masanga salaai chhaina.  
- I don't have any matches with me now.

ma sanga das rupiyaa maatra chha. I've only ten rupees with me.

- b) 'mero chha' means *I have one, own one*, but it could be anywhere, not necessarily with me at the time.

mero ghar chhaina.  
mero aakhaa chhan.  
mero gaai chha.

I don't have a house.  
I have eyes.  
I have a cow.

Note- 'sanga' cannot be used in the examples given in (b) above.

## LESSON 16

### VOCABULARY

aghi	ago	samma	until, up to
dekhi	from	Turist	tourist
pugnu	to be enough	umaaleho	boiled

### PART I

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. wahāā ko hunuhunchha ?<br>wahāā Tam hunuhunchha.                             | Who is he ?<br>That's Tom.                       |
| 2. wahāāko ghar kahāā ho ni ?<br>wahāāko ghar amerikaa ho.                      | Where is his home ?<br>His home is in America.   |
| 3. wahāā TurisT hunuhunchha ?<br>hoina, wahāā pani swayam<br>sewak hunnuhunchha | Is he a tourist ?<br>No, he is also a volunteer. |
| 4. wahāā kahile nepaal aaeko ?<br>dui haptaa aghi.                              | When did he come to Nepal ?<br>Two weeks ago.    |

### PART II

#### (a)

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. tyo kasko kalam ho ?<br>yo mero kalam ho.                                      | Whose pen is that ?<br>This is my pen.                            |
| 2. tapaaiko kalam kasto chha ?<br>mero kalam kaalo chha.                          | What color is your pen ?<br>My pen is black.                      |
| 3. tapaaiko naam lekhnos.<br>tapaaile ke garnubhayo ?<br>maile aaphno naam lekhe. | Write your name, please.<br>What did you do ?<br>I wrote my name. |

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 4. wahāāle ke garnu bhayo ?<br>wahaāle aaphno naam lekhnu<br>bhayo. | What did he do ?<br>He wrote his name. |
|---|--|

(b)

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. tyo kasko jholaa ho ?<br>yo mero jholaa ho.                    | Whose shoulder-bag is that ?<br>It's my bag.        |
| 2. tapaaiko jholaa kasto chha ?<br>mero jholaa rangi-changi chha. | What is your bag like ?<br>My bag is multi-colored. |
| 3. tapaaiko jholaa phohar chha ?<br>chhaina, saphaa chha.         | Is your bag dirty ?<br>No, it's clean.              |
| 4. tapaaiko jholaa saano chha ki<br>Thulo chha ?<br>saano chha.   | Is your bag small or big ?<br><br>It's small.       |

(c)

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. timiharu kitaab paDha.<br>timiharu ke gardaichhau ?<br>haamiharu paDhdaichhaū. | Read your books.<br>What are you doing ?<br>We are reading. |
| 2. uniharu ke gardaichhan ?<br>uniharu paDhdaichhan.                              | What are they doing ?<br>They are reading.                  |
| 3. pugyo.<br>timiharule ke garyau ?<br>haamiharule paDhyaū.                       | That's enough.<br>What did you do ?<br>We read the books.   |

(d)

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. jhyaal banda garnos.<br>tapaaile Dhokaa banda garnu<br>bhayo ? | Close the window, please.<br>Did you close the door ? |
|---|---|

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| hoina, maile Dhohaa banda garina.   | No, I dodn't close the door.                             |
| 2. ke garnubhayo ta ?<br>maile jhyaal banda garē.                                 | What did you do then ?<br>I closed the window.           |
| 3. wahāāle Dhokaa banda garnubhayo ?<br>hoina, wahāāle Dhokaa banda garnu bhaena. | Did he close the door ?<br>No, he didn't close the door. |
| 4. ke garnubhayo ta ?<br>wahāāle jhyaal banda garnubhayo.                         | What did he do then ?<br>He closed the window.           |

### COMPREHENSION

Devko ghar amerika hoo. dui haptaa aghi u nepal aayo. u angreji bolchha. ahile u nepaali sikdaichha. Dev saat bajedekhi nau baje samma nepaali sikcha, diuso baarha baje u khaanaa khaana hoTelmaa jaanchha. u daal bhaat khaadaina. u roTi tarkaari maasu ra dudh khaanchha. u maaleko paani maatra khaanchha.

### QUESTIONS -

1. Devko ghar amerikaa ho ?
2. u kahile nepaal aayo ?
3. u kun bhaashaa bolchha ?
4. ahile u kun bhaashaa sikdaichha ?
5. u kati bajedekhi kati bajesamaa nepaali sikchha ?
6. Dev diuso baarha baje kina hoTelmaa jaanchha ?
7. u daal bhaat khaanchha ?
8. u ke ke khaanchha ?
9. u kasto paani khaanchha ?
10. tapaa! kasto paani khaanuhunchha ?

## NOTES

1. The Nepali word for 'tourist' is *paryaTak* but the English word is also commonly used.
2. 'dekhi' implies 'since' or 'from' and is used as follows:

uniharu aaTh bajedekhi nepaali	They study Nepali from eight
paDhchhan.	o'clock on.
u hijodekhi biraami chha.	He's been sick since yesterday.

'dekhi' is also used in other instances. Examples will be found in later lessons.

3. 'baaTa' means 'from' but in a different sense than 'dekhi'.

Note the following:

yo bas paaTanbaaTa aaüchha.	This bus comes from Patan.
ma gharbaaTa aaüdaichu.	I'm coming from my home.

4. 'samma' – 'to until, up to, as far as'.

yo bas bhaktapursamma	This bus goes as far as Bhaktapur.
jaanchha.	
haami pāāch baje samma kaam	We work until five o'clock.
garchhaū	

## LESSON 17

### VOCABULARY

bajai	grandmother	lugaa	dress, clothes
dahi	yogurt	nayāā	new
kolaagi	for	phalphul	fruit
khukuri	Gorkha knife	puraano	old

### PART I

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. aaja ke baar ho ?<br>aaja sombaar ho.          | What day is it today ?<br>Today is Monday.                                |
| 2. yo kun mahinaa ho ?<br>yo mangsir mahinaa ho.  | What month is this ?<br>This is the month of Mangsir.                     |
| 3. aaja kati gate ho ?<br>aaja bis gate ho.       | What is the date to day?<br>Today is the 20th.                            |
| 4. bholi kati gate ho ?<br>bholi ekkaais gate ho. | What is the date tomorrow ?<br>Tomorrow is the 21st.                      |
| 5. parsi ni ?<br>parsi baais gate ho.             | What about the day after tomorrow?<br>The day after tommorrow is the 22nd |

### PART II

#### (a)

- |  |                                    |
|--|------------------------------------|
| 1. tapaaſsanga kalam chha ?<br>chha.                 | Do you have a pen ?<br>Yes, I do.  |
| 2. kalam keko laagi ho ?<br>kalam lekhnako laagi ho. | What is a pen for ?<br>For writing |

3. tapaaiko naam lekhnos.  
tapaaile ke lekhnubhayo ?  
maile naam lekhē.
4. wahāāle ke garnubhayo ?  
wahaāle naam lekhnubhayo.
5. wahāāle tapaaiko naam  
lekhnubhayo ?  
hoina, wahāāle mero naam  
lekhnubhaena.
6. wahāāle kasko naam lekhnubhayo ta ?  
wahāāle aaphno naam  
lekhnubhayo.

Write your name please.  
What did you write ?  
I wrote my name.  
What did he do ?  
He wrote his name.  
Did he write your name ?  
No, he didn't write my name.  
Whose name did he write then ?  
He wrote his own name.

(b)

1. tapaa/sanga kitaab chha ?  
chha.
2. kitaab keko laagi ho ?  
paDhnako laagi.
3. paDhnus.  
tapaaile ke garnubhayo ?  
maile paDhē
4. tapaaile ke paDhnubhayo ?  
maile kitaab paDhē.
5. tapaaile mero kitaab paDhnubhayo ?  
hoina, maile tapaaiko kitaab  
paDhina.
6. kasko kitaab paDhnubhayo ta ?  
maile mero kitaab paDhē.

Do you have a book ?  
Yes, I do.  
What is a book for ?  
For reading.  
Please read.  
What did you do ?  
I read the book.  
What did you read ?  
I read the book.  
Did you read my book. ?  
No, I didn't read your book.  
Whose book did you read, then ?  
I read my book.



(c)

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. tyo kasko jholaa ho ?<br>yo mero jholaa ho.                              | Whose shoulder bag is that ?<br>This is my bag.         |
| 2. tapaaiko jholaa puraano chha?<br>chhaina, nayaa chha.                    | Is your bag old ?<br>No, it's new.                      |
| 3. tyo jholaa paDhnako laagi ho?<br>hoina.                                  | Is that bag for reading ?<br>No, it's not.              |
| 4. keko laagi ho ta ?<br>chij-bij raakhnalaai.                              | What is it for then ?<br>To put things into.            |
| 5. tapaa jholaamaa ke raakhnu-<br>hunchha ?<br>mero kitaab, kaapi ra kalam. | What do you put in your bag ?<br>My book, copy and pen. |

(d)

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. aaja belukaako laagi maasu<br>chha.<br>chha.               | Do we have meat for this evening?<br><br>Yes, we do.         |
| 2. yo dahi kahileko laagi ho ni ?<br>tyo aaj diusokolaagi ho. | When is this yogurt for ?<br>That's for this afternoon.      |
| 3. diusokolaagi phal phul chhaina?<br><br>chha.               | Don't we have fruit for this<br>afternoon ?<br>Yes, we do.   |
| 4. ke ke chha ?<br>syaau, suntalaa ra keraa.                  | What do we have ?<br>We have apples, oranges and<br>bananas. |

(e)

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. yo jho aa kasko laagi kinnu-<br>bhayo ?<br>mero bahiniko laagi. | Who did you buy this bag for ?<br><br>For my younger sister. |
|--|--|

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 2. tapaalko baako laagi ke<br>kinnubhayo ta ?<br>euTaa khukuri kine. | What did you buy for your father?<br>I bought a Gorhha knife. |
| 3. aamaako laagi ni ?<br>aamaako laagi tibbati lugaa.                | How about for your mother ?<br>A Tibetan dress for my mother. |
| 4. tyo galaichha kasko laagi ho ni?<br>yo mero bajaiko laagi ho.     | Who is that carpet for then ?<br>This is for my grandmother.  |

### GRAMMAR NOTES

1. 'gate' or *the date* is used to ask the Nepali date according to the lunar calendar.

aaja kati gate ho ?	What is the Nepalese date to-day ?
---------------------	------------------------------------

'taarikh'— although a Hindi word, it is used to ask the date according to the English calendar.

aaja kati taarikh ho ?	What is the date today ?
aaj pāāch taarikho	Today is the fifth.

### 2. ko laagi.

- (a) It is generally used in the same manner as 'for' in English:

mero laagi	for me
baako laagi	for father

- (b) When used in time context also, it means the same as 'for' in English.

ma tin haptaakolaagi pohharaa jaanchhu.	I'm going to Pohhara for three weeks.
--	--

NOTE—'ko laagi' is often shortened to 'laai..

khaana ho laagi	khaanalaai
baako laagi	baalaai
ek mahinaako laagi	eh mahinaalaai

## LESSON 18

### VOCABULARY

agaaDi	in front of	najik	near
anchal	zone	najikai	nearby
baaTo	road, path, trail	naksaa	map
chakki	tablet		
chin	China	paschim	west
dakchhin	south	pachhaaDi	behind
desh	country	paTak	times
hiDera	on foot	purba	east
jati	about	saDah	road
kataatira ?	in what direction	uttar	north

### PART I

1. tapaako Deraa kahāā chha ? Where is your apartment ?  
gyaaneswarmaa. It's in Gyaneswar.
2. yahāābaaTa najik chha ki Is it close by or far from here ?  
TaaDhaa chha ?  
najik chha. It's close by.
3. saaikalmaa kati mineT laagchha? How long does it take by bicycle ?  
das mineT. Ten minutes.
4. hiDera kati mineT laagchha ni? How many minutes does it take  
by foot ?  
karib pandhra mineT. About fifteen minutes.
5. tapaaI hiDera jaanu hunchha Do you walk or go by bicycle ?  
ki saaikalmaa ?  
dherai jaso hiDera jaanchhu. I usually walk.

## PART II

### (a)

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. tyo ke ho ?<br>yo naksaa ho.                                 | What is that ?<br>This is a map.                           |
| 2. tyo kun deshko naksaa ho ?<br>yo nepaalko naksaa ho.         | Of which country ?<br>This is a map of Nepal.              |
| 3. ilaam kataatira parchha ?<br>ilaam purbatira parchha.        | What direction is Ilam in ?<br>Ilam is in the east.        |
| 4. jumlaa kataatira parchha ?<br>jumlaa paschimtira parchha.    | What direction is Jumla in ?<br>Jumlaa is in the west.     |
| 5. mustaang kataatira parchha ?<br>mustaang uttartira parchha.  | What direction is Mustang in ?<br>Mustang is in the north. |
| 6. birganj kataatira parchha ?<br>birganj dakchhinmaa parchha ? | What direction is Birgunj in ?<br>Birgunj is in the south. |

### (b)

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. nepaalko purbammaa kun desh<br>parchha ?<br>nepaalko purbamaa inDiyaa<br>parchha.             | Which country is east of Nepal ?<br>India is east of Nepal.          |
| 2. nepaalko paschimmaa kun<br>desh parchha ni ?<br>nepaalko pashchimmaa pani<br>inDiyaa parchha. | Which country is west of Nepal ?<br>India is also the west of Nepal. |
| 3. nepaalko uttarmaa kun desh<br>parchha ?<br>nepaalko uttarmaa chin parchha.                    | Which country is north of Nepal ?<br>China is north of Nepal.        |
| 4. dakchhinmaa ni ?<br>inDiyaa parchha.  | How about in the south ?<br>India.                                   |

(c)

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. pokharaa kun anchalmaa<br>parchha ?<br>pokharaa ganDaki anchalmaa<br>parchha. | Which zone is Pohhara in ?<br><br>Pohhara is in Gandahi zone. |
| 2. kaaThmaanDu pani ganDaki<br>anchalmaa parchha ?<br>pardaina.                  | Is Kathmandu also in Gandaki<br>zone ?<br>No, itn't.          |
| 3. kun anchalmaa parchha ta ?<br>baagmati anchalmaa parchha.                     | Which is it in then ?<br>It's in Bagmati zone.                |
| 4. paaTan ni ?<br>paaTan pani baagmati<br>anchalmaa parchha.                     | How about Patan ?<br>Patan is also in Bagmati zone.           |

(d)

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. tapaaiko ghar kun raajyamaa<br>parchha ?<br>mero ghar Teksaasmaa parchha.               | Which state are you from ?<br><br>I'm from Texas.                                      |
| 2. Teksaas uttartira parchha ki<br>dakchhintira parchha ?<br>Teksaas dakchhintira parchha. | Is Texas in the north or south ?<br><br>Texas is in the south.                         |
| 3. TeksaasbaaTa siyaaTal najik<br>parchha ?<br>pardaina, dherai TaaDhaa<br>parchha.        | Is Seattle close to Texas ?<br><br>No, it isn't. It's very far.                        |
| 4. siyaaTal jaana relmaa kati din<br>laagchha ?<br>dui din laagchha holaa.                 | How many days does it take to<br>get to Seattle by train ?<br>It takes about two days. |

(e)

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. tapaaiko Deraa kahaanira<br>parchha ?                                    | Where is your apartment ?   |
| 2. solTi hoTelnira.   | Near the Solatee Hotel.   |
| 2. solTi hoTelbaaTa kati mineT<br>laagchha ?<br>tin minetT jati laagchha.   | How many minutes does it take to<br>get there from the Soaltee ?<br>It takes about three minutes. |
| 3. baaTobaaTa debretira parchha<br>ki daahinetira ?<br>daahinetira parchha. | Is it on the left or right of the<br>road ?<br>It's on the right.                                 |
| 4. taapaako gharkopachhaaDike<br>chha ?<br>khet chha.                       | What's behind your house ?<br>There's a rice field.   |
| 5. agaaDi ni ?<br>agaaDi saDak chha.  | And in the front ?<br>There's a road in the front.  |

#### GRAMMAR NOTES

1. In this lesson, **laagnu**, is used for inquiring and stating the amount of time required to do something:

**saaikalmaa kati mineT laagchha? How many minutes does it take by bicycle ?**

Note that in the preceding lessons '**laagnu**, was used when referring to the cost of something and when describing feelings or sensations. There are still more uses of '**laagnu**' which will be dealt with in later lessons.

'**laagnu**' is usually used as an impersonal verb. However, in some contexts it can also function as a personal one.

ma ghartira laagē.  
haami ghartira laagyaū

I am on my way home.  
we are on our way home.

u ghartira laagyo.  
 uniharu ghartira laage.  
 timi ghartira laagyau.  
 tapaa! ghartira laagnubhayo.

He's on his way home.  
 They are on their way home.  
 You are on your way home.  
 You (hon) are on your way home.

In this sense 'laagnu' is describing specifically the intention or pre-indication of going home.

2. 'parnu'— literally means 'to fall' as of 'rain'. However, in this lesson it is used to indicate direction or location.

ebharest nepaalmaa parchha. Everest lies in Nepal.  
 pokharaa paschimmaa parchha. Pokhara is in the west.

Note the difference in the two meanings of 'parnu' that have been introduced so far.

'tyo ghaDiko kati parchha ? How much does that watch cost ?  
 ilaam kataatira parchna ? Which direction is Ilam in ?

'parnu' as 'laagnu' functions both as personal and an impersonal verb. It is shown functioning as an impersonal verb in the examples given in this lesson as well as in lesson 13. Its personal usages will be given in later lessons: Study the following examples

dhankuTaa purba parchha.  
 dhankuTaa purbamaa parchha.  
 dhankuTaa purbatira parchha.  
 dhankuTaa purbapaTTi parchha.

Dhankuta is in the east.  
 " " "  
 Dhankuta is towards east  
 " " "

## LESSON 17

### VOCABULARY

bhaat	cooked-rice	eklai	alone
chamchaa	spoon	haat	hand
chiniyāā	Chinese	jhiknu	to take out
daal	lentils	kāāTaa	fork

### PART I

1. tapaaI kahāā basnuhunchha ?      Where do you live ?  
ma paaTanmaa baschhu.      I live in Patan.
2. eklai ki saathisanga ?      Do you live alone or with friends ?  
eklai.      Alone.
3. paaTanbaaTa yahāā kasari      How do you come here from  
aaunuhunchha ?      Patan ?  
basmaa aaūchhu.      By bus.
4. basmaa kati mineT laagchha ?      How long does it take by bus ?  
pandhra mineT laagchha.      It takes fifteen minutes.

### PART II

1. tapaaI daal bhaat khaanu      Do you eat rice or not ?  
hunchha ki khaanuhunna ?  
khaanchhu.      Yes, I do.
2. tapaaI kele daalbhaat khaanu      How do you eat rice ?  
hunchha ?  
ma haatle daal bhaat khaanchhu.      I eat rice with my hand.
3. wahāā kele daalbhaat khaanu      What does he eat rice with ?  
hunchha ?  
wahāā haatle daalbaat khaanu-      He eats rice with his hand.  
hunchha.



4. tapaal kele chiniyāā khaanaa  
khaanuhunchha ?  
kāāTaa chamchaale.

How do you eat your Chinese  
food ?  
With a fork and a spoon.

(b)

1. tapaaiko kalam kahāā chha ?  
mero kalam khaltimaa chha.

Where is your pen ?  
My pen is in my pocket.

2. jhiknos.  
tapaaile ke garnubhayo ?  
maile kalam jhikē.

Please take it out.  
What did you do ?  
I took out my pen.

3. tapaaiko naam lekhnos.  
tapaaile ke garnubhayo ?  
maile naam lekhē.

Write your name, please  
What did you do ?  
I wrote my name.

4. tapaaile kele naam lekhnubhayo ?  
maile kalamle naam lekhē.

What did you write your name  
with ?  
I wrote my name with my pen.

5. tapaaile mero nam lekhnubhayo ?  
hoina, lekhina.

Did you write my name ?  
No, I didn't.

6. kasko naam lekhnubhayo ta ?  
maile mero naam lekhē.

Whose name did you write then ?  
I wrote my name.

(c)

1. hijo tapaaile kaslaai chiTThi  
lekhnubhayo ?  
maile baalaai chiTThi lekhē.

Who did you write the letter to,  
yesterday ?  
I wrote the letter to my father.

2. aaja bihaana tapaaile kaslaai  
chiTThi lekhnubhayo ?  
aaja bihaana maile bhaailaai  
chiTThi lekhē.

Who did you write a letter to,  
this morning ?  
I wrote a letter to my younger  
brother this morning.

3. tapaaile aaja didilaai chiTThi  
lekhnubhayo ?

Did you write to your elder sister  
to-day ?

lekhina.

No, I didn't.

4. tapaaile didilaai kahile chiTThi  
lekhnubhayo ta ?  
maile didilaai ek haptaa aghi  
chiTThi lekhē.

When did you write to your elder  
sister ?  
I wrote to my elder sister one  
week ago.

#### GRAMMAR NOTES

ma haatile daal bhaat  
khaanchhu.

I eat rice with my hand.

'le' in the above example is used to identify the agent or to mark the instrument with which an action is done.

Other usages of 'le'—

a) 'le' is used with the subject of all transitive verbs as in the following:

1) the simple past tense

maile bhaat khaaē.  
usle chiTThi lekhyo.  
timile kitaab paDhyau.

I ate rice.  
He wrote a letter.  
You read a book.

2) the first and second participles.

a) malle gareko chhu.  
usle khaaeko chhaina.  
b) usle kitaab paDhechha.  
  
timile paisaa chorechhau.

I have done.  
He has not eaten.  
He has read the book.  
(I noticed it)  
You have stolen money.  
(It has been discovered)

b) 'le' is not used on the subject of intransitive verb—

ma gaē.  
u basyo.

not  
not

maile gaē.  
usle basyo.

Other usages of 'le' will appear in later lessons.

2. **'laai'** is used to denote the object of a sentence. It should always be used with the object when it is a person or a pronoun.

maile baalaai chiTTThi lekhē.      I wrote a letter to my father.  
raamle uslaai das rupiyāā diyo.      Ram gave him ten rupees.

It should not be used on non-animate objects.

maile kitaab kine **not** maile kitaab laai kine.

## LESSON 20

### VOCABULARY

aDhaai	two and half	kukhuraa	chicken
bidaa	holiday	mandir	temple
chiDiyaa khaanaa	zoo	phul	egg
DeDh	one and half	saaThi	sixty
gaarho	difficult	sajilo	easy
jhanDai	almost	sattari	seventy

### PART I

#### (a)

1. tapaal nepaal aaeko kati bhayo? How long ago did you come to Nepal ?  
jhanDai ek mahinaa bhayo. It's been almost a month.
2. nepaalmaa kasari aaunu bhayo ni ? How did you come to Nepal ?  
hawaai jahaajmaa. I came by plane.
3. kati din laagyo ? How many days did it take ?  
aDhaai din. Two and a half days.
4. ahile ke gardaihunuhunchha ? What are you doing now ?  
nepaali sikdai chhu. I'm learning Nepali.
5. nepaali sajilo laagyo ki gaarho ? Have you found Nepali easy or difficult ?  
sajilo laagyo. I've found it easy.

#### (b)

1. e saahuji ! kukhuraako phul kasari ho ? Oh shopkeeper ! How much is a chicken egg ?  
euTaako tin sukaa. Seventy five paisa each.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 2. ali mahāgo bhayo. saaThi<br>paisaamaa dinos, hunchha ?<br>hudaina.              | That's a bit expensive. Sell it for<br>sixty paisa, o. k. ?<br>No.                              |
| 3. sattari paisaamaa dine ki<br>nadine ?<br>hunchha. linos. katiwaTaa diū ?        | Would you sell it for seventy<br>paisa or not ?<br>O.K. Take it. How many shall<br>I give you ? |
| 4. daswaTaa dinos. ek keji chini<br>pani dinos.<br>hawas. aru kehi chaahinchha ki? | Please give me ten. Also give me<br>one k. g. of sugar.<br>O. k. Do you need any thing else ?   |
| 5. chaahidaina. jammaa kati<br>bhayo ?<br>terha rupiyāā maatrai.                   | No, I don't. How much does it<br>come to ?<br>Only thirteen rupees.                             |

## PART II

(a)

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. hijo tapaaI kina iskul aaunu<br>bhaena ?<br>hijo bidaa thiyo.          | Why didn't you come to school<br>yesterday ?<br>Yesterday was a holiday.  |
| 2. hijo ke garnubhayo ta ?<br>hijo paaTantira ghumna gaē.                 | What did you do yesterday ?<br>I went for a walk towards Patan.           |
| 3. paaTanmaa ke ke hernubhayo ?<br>krishna mandir ra chiDiyaa<br>khaanaa. | What did you see in Patan ?<br>The temple of Lord Krishna and<br>the zoo. |
| 4. kati baje ghara pharkanubhayo?<br>belukaa chha baje.                   | What time did you go back home?<br>At six in the evening                  |

(b)

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. <b>hijo chaar baje gharmaa<br/>hunuhunthyo ?<br/>thiina.</b>       | <b>Were you home at 4 o'clock yes-<br/>terday ?<br/>No, I wasn't.</b> |
| 2. <b>pāāch baje ni ?<br/>pāāch baje ta thiē.</b>                     | <b>How about at five o'clock ?<br/>I was home at five o'clock.</b>    |
| 3. <b>chaar baje kahāā hunuhunthyo ?<br/>ma madanko gharmaa thiē.</b> | <b>Where were you at four o'clock ?<br/>I was at Madan's.</b>         |
| 4. <b>madanko aamaa baabu pani<br/>gharmaa thie ?<br/>thienan.</b>    | <b>Were Madan's parents also at<br/>home ?<br/>No, they weren't.</b>  |

(c)

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. <b>DeDh mahinaa aghi tapaai<br/>nepaalmā hunuhunthyo ?<br/>thiina.</b>    | <b>Were you in Nepal a month and<br/>a half ago ?<br/>No, I wasn't.</b> |
| 2. <b>kahāā hunuhunthyo ta ?<br/>Tokiyomā thiē.</b>                          | <b>Where were you then ?<br/>I was in Tokyo.</b>                        |
| 3. <b>miki kahāā thiyo ni ?<br/>miki pani Tokiyomā thiyo.</b>                | <b>Where was Miki ?<br/>Miki also was in Tokyo.</b>                     |
| 4. <b>Tokiyomā jaaDo thiyo ki<br/>garmi thiyo ?<br/>ali ali jaaDo thiyo.</b> | <b>Was it cold or hot in Tokyo ?<br/><br/>It was kind of cold.</b>      |

(d)

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. <b>tapaallāi nepaali git gaauna<br/>aaūchha ?<br/>euTaa duiTaa gaauna sakchhu.</b> | <b>Do you know how to sing Nepali<br/>songs ?<br/>I can sing one or two songs.</b> |
|---|--|

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 2. kahāā siknubhayo ?<br>yahl kaaThmaanDumaa.                      | Where did you learn them ?<br>Here in Kathmandu.   |
| 3. tapaai reDiyo nepaal sunnu-<br>hunchha.<br>kahile kahi sunchhu. | Do you listen to Radio Nepal ?<br>Sometimes.       |
| 4. bi. bi. si. ni ?<br>bi. bi. si. ta dherai jaso sunchhu.         | How about B.B.C. ?<br>I usually listen to B. B. C. |

### COMPREHENSION

maarkko ghar belaayat ho. u nepaal aaeho jhanDai tin mahinaa bhayo. belaayatmaa u euTaa kalejmaa bidyarthi thiyo. usle dui mahinaa kaaThmaanDumaa nepaali sikyo. uslaai nepaali gaarho laagena. maark ahile euTaa iskulmaa angreji paDhaaudai chha. usko iskul nayaa ho. pohor saal usko iskulmaa dui sae keTaaharu thie. keTi euTaa pani thiena. ahile tis janaa keTi ra paune tin sae keTaaharu paDhchhan.

### QUESTIONS--

1. maarkko ghar kahāā ho ?
2. u nepaal aaeko kati bhayo ?
3. belaayatmaa u ke thiyo ?
4. usle kati mahinaa nepaali sikyo ?
5. marh ahile ke gardaichha ?
6. uslaai nepaali sajilo laagyo ki gaarho ?
7. pohor saal usko iskulmaa kati bidyarthi thie ?
8. heTi ni ?
9. ahile usko iskulmaa jammaa kati bidyarthi paDhchhan ?

## GRAMMAR NOTES

### 1. Conjugation. Past Tense

of verb 'to be'

'**hunu**'

PRONOUNS	AFFIRMATIVE	NEGATIVE	TRANSLATION
ma	thiē	thiina	I was/ wasn't
tā	thiis	thiinas	you were/weren't
u	thiyo	thiena	He was/wasn't
haami	thiyaū	thiyenaū	We were/weren't
timi	thiyau	thienau	You were/weren't
uniharū	thie	thienan	They were/weren't
tapaaf	hunuhunthyo	hunuhunnathyo	You were/weren't

Note the following patterns as well:

aaitabaar bidaa thiyo.

Sunday was a holiday.

aaja bihaana jaaDo thiena.

It wasn't cold this morning.

sanibaar ma biraami thiē.

I was ill on Saturday.

baaTo phohor thiyo.

The road was dirty.

2. '**laaguu**' is used here as an impersonal verb which requires '**laai**' on the subject.

malaai nepaali sajilo laagyo.

I found Nepali easy.

ma'aa nepaali gaarho laagena.

I didn't find Nepali difficult.

3. '**aaūnu**' in the following examples means '*to know how to*' and functions impersonally as '**laaguu**' i. e. the verb endings do not change.

malaai nepaali git gaauna

I know how to sing Nepali songs.

aačhha.

malaai nepaali lekhna aauchha?

Do you know how to write Nepali?

uniharulaai bhaat pakaauna

They do not know how to cook

aaūdaina.

rice.

haamilaai ta aaūchha.

But we know how to.

uslaai moTar chalaana aaūdaina

He does not know how to drive



#### 4. Units of measurement—

**paaisaa**— The smallest unit of Nepali currency. There are 100 paisa in a rupee.

**anaa**— Four paisa. However, in Terai, 4 anas = 25 paisa, 8 anas = 50 paisa and 16 anas = 1 rupee

**mohar**— 50 paisa.

#### 5. **liū** – This form is used to mean ‘May I.....’ ‘should I.....’ ‘or’ ‘can I.....’

ma saathisaga jaaū ?

May I go with my friend?

katiwaTaa phul lyaaū ?

How many eggs should I bring ?

ma ek rupiyāā liū ?

Can I take a rupee ?

jaaū

Let’s go.

Also study the following imperative sentences.

timi bholi aau.

Come tomorrow.

uniharu ek chhin basun.

Let them stay for a while.

u pani haamisanga aawos.

Let him come with us.

taas nakhela.

Don’t play cards.

The imperative mood.

ma

jaau

May I go ?

tā

jaa, jaanū

you go.

u

jaawos

I et him go.

haami

jaawaū, jaaū

I et us go.

timi

jaau, jaanu

you go.

uniharu

jaauun

Let them go.

tapaa!

jaanus, jaanuhos,

you go.

## LESSON 21

### VOCABULARY

aglo	tall	jasto	like
bahaal	rent	jattikai	like (that)
charpi	latrine	mausam	weather
chhiTo	fast, early	moTo	fat
dhaaro	water-tap	paani parnu	to rain
Dhilo	slow, late	pharak	different
dublo	thin, slim	pariwaar	family
ekai	same	sab bhandaa	the most(superlative)
garmi	hot		
hocho	short (in height)	sae	hundred

### PART I

1. tapaalko aaphno Deraa chha      Do you have your own apartment  
ki pariwaarmaa basnuhunchha ?      or do you live with a family ?  
mero aaphno Deraa chha.      I have my own apartment.
2. bahaal kati chha ni ?      How much is the rent ?  
paune dui sae.      A hundred and seventy-five.
3. koThaa katiwaTaa chhan ?      How many rooms do you have ?  
tinwaTaa. duiTaa sutne ko Thaa      Three. Two bedrooms and a  
ra euTaa bhaansaa.      kitchen.
4. charpi chha ki chhaina ?      Do you have a bathroom ?  
chha, tara raamro chhaina.      Yes, I do. But it's not a good one.
5. dhaaro ni ?      How about a water tap ?  
dhaaro pani chha.      There's a water tap too.

## PART II

1. maachhaapuchhre kati aglo chha ?      How high is Machhapuchhre ?  
maachhaapuchhre karib 23,000 phiT aglo chha.      Machhapuchhre is about 23,000 feet high.
2. dhaulaagiri ni ?      .....and Dhaulagiri ?  
dhaulaagiri karib 27000 phiT aglo chha.      Dhaulagiri is about 27000 feet high.
3. kun pahaaD sabbhandaa aglo chha ?      Which is the highest mountain ?  
sagarmaathaa sabbhandaa aglo chha.      Everest is the highest of them all.
4. sagarmaathaa kataa parchha ?      In which direction is Everest ?  
sagarmaathaa purbamaa parchha.      Everest is located in the east.
5. dhaulaagiri ni ?      How about Dhaulagiri ?  
dhaulaagiri paschimmaa parchha.      Dhaulagiri is in the west.
6. maachhaapuchhre kahaanira parchha ?      What is Machhapuchhre near ?  
maachhaapuchhre pohharaanira parchha.      Machhapuchhre is near Pohhara.

### (b)

1. maaik aaja bihaana kati baje uThyo ?      What time did Mike get up this morning ?  
maaik chaar baje uThyo.      Mike got up at four o'clock.
2. PiTar ni ?      How about Peter ?  
PiTar saaDhe paach baje uThyo.      Peter got up at half-past five.
3. tapaaI kati baje uThnubhaya ni?      What time did you get up ?  
ma chha baje uThē.      I got up at six o'clock.

4. maaik bhandaa piTar chhiTo  
uThyo ki Dhilo ?  
piTar Dhilo uThyo.

Did Peter get up earlier or later  
than Mike ?  
Peter got up later.

5. ko sabbhandaa Dhilo uThyo ?  
ma sabbhandaa Dhilo uThē.

Who got up last ?  
I got up last.

(c)

1. timro ghar taraaimaa ho ?  
ho.

Are you from the Terai ?  
Yes.

2. hijo aaja taraaimaa mausam  
kasto chha ?  
kaaThmaanDumaa bhandaa  
dherai garmi chha.

What's the weather like in the  
Terai these days ?  
It's hotter than in Kathmandu.

3. hiudmaa kasto hunchha ni ?  
hiudmaa dherai garmi pani  
hudaina jaaDo pani hudaina.

How about in the winter ?  
It's neither very hot nor very  
cold.

4. hijo aaja taraaimaa paani  
parchha ?  
dhumdhaam parchha.

Does it rain in the Terai these days?  
Yes, it rains a lot.

(d)

1. tapaalko ghaDi mero jasto chha? Is your watch like mine ?  
chhaina, pharak chha.

No, it's different.

2. mol pani pharak chha ki ?  
mol ta ekai holaa.

Is the price also different ?  
I think the price is about the same.

3. tapaalko saathiko ghaDi ni ?  
usko haamro bhandaa mahāgo  
chha.

How about your friend's watch ?  
His is more expensive than ours.

4. usko kati rupiyāā paryo ?  
pāāch sae rupiyaa paryo.

How much did his cost ?  
It was five hundred rupees.

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. yo koThaamaa sabbhandaa<br>moTo ko chha ?<br>Tam chha.                                     | Who's the fattest in this room ?<br>Tom is.                               |
| 2. sabbhandaa dublo ko chha ni ?<br>sabbhandaa dublo jim chha.                                | And who is the thinnest ?<br>Jim is the thinnest.                         |
| 3. piTar dublo chha ki moTo chha?<br>u Tam bhandaa dublo chha,<br>tara jim bhandaa moTo chha. | Is Peter fat or thin ?<br>He is thinner than Tom, but<br>fatter than Jim. |
| 4. tapaaini ?<br>ma PiTar jattikai chhu.  | How about you ?<br>I'm like peter.  |

#### GRAMMAR NOTES

1. 'bhandaa' is used with comparative degree of adjectives and is translated as '*than*

raam bhandaa shyaam aglo chha. nepaal bhandaa amerikaa Thulo chha.	Shyam is taller than Ram. America is bigger than Nepal.
---	---

Note the word order of comparisons in Nepali:

- i. e. 'raam bhaanda'..... 'while in English the reverse is said,  
i. e.....*than Ram*

To avoid confusion, look for the word after '*than*' in English and say that first followed by 'bhandaa'

In instances of comparison where '*than*' is not used in English, Nepali remains the same as in the basic question form of descriptions.

ko thulo chha ? ko Thulo chha ?	Who is big ? Who is bigger ?
------------------------------------	---------------------------------

2. The word 'jhan' is also used in making comparisons.

usko ghar raamro chha.	His house is beautiful.
usko bhaaiko ghar jhan raamro chha.	His brother's house is all the more beautiful.

'sabbhandaa' is the superlative degree of adjectives.

yo kitaab sabbhandaa raamro chha.	This is the best book.
yo pasal sabbhandaa mahāgo chha.	This is the most expensive store.

Note that sometimes the superlative degree is also formed by doubling the adjectives.

a) miThaa miThha khaane kuraa lyaa.	Bring me the most delicious food.
b) usle mahāgaa mahāgaa ghaDi kinyo.	He bought the most expensive watches.

## LESSON 22

### VOCABULARY

banaaunu	to make	khaali	empty, vacant
chalaanu	to drive	kinmel garnu	to shop
disaa garnu	to defecate	nuhaaunu	to bathe
dhunu	to wash	paDhaaunu	to teach
ek chhin	a moment	pharkaaunu	to return
	a while	pisaab garnu	to urinate
kahile kah!	sometimes	saalaa-khaalaa	on the average
kamaaunu	to earn.		
	to make money		

### PART I

1. yo Tyaaksi khaali ho ? Is this Taxi empty ?  
khaali ho, tapaa! kahāā jaane ? Yes, it is. Where would you like to go ?
2. paaTansamma kati linu To Patan. How much would you  
hunchha ? charge ?  
miTar chha ni. It has a meter in it.
3. tapaa!le yo Tyaaksi chalaako How long have you been driving  
kati bhayo ? this Taxi ?  
jhanDai chaar barsha bhayo. For almost four years.
4. ek dinmaa kati kamaaunu How much do you earn (get)  
hunchha ? a day ?  
saalaa-khaalaa pachaas rupiyāā. Fifty rupees on the average

## PART II

### (a)

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. tapaa! bihaana kati baje<br>uThnuhunchha ?<br>saat baje uThchhu.          | What time do you get up in the morning ?<br>I get up at seven o'clock.        |
| 2. uThera ke garnuhunchha ?<br>disaa pisaab garchhu ani<br>nuhaaachhu.       | What do you do after getting up ?<br>I go to the bath room and take a shower. |
| 3. ani ke garnuhunchha ?<br>chiyaa khaanchhu.                                | What do you do then ?<br>I have tea.  |
| 4. chiyaa aaphai banaaunu<br>hunchha ?<br>hoina, kaam garne maachhe<br>chha. | Do you make tea yourself ?<br>No, I've a worker.                              |
| 5. uslaai mahinaako kati dinu<br>parchha ?<br>DeDh saya.                     | How much do you have to pay him per month ?<br>One hundred and fifty rupees.  |
| 6. aru ke kaam garchha ra ?<br>lugaa dhunchha ani koThaa<br>saphaa garchha.  | What else does he do ?<br>He washes clothes and cleans the room.              |

### (b)

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. aaja bihaana tapaa! kati baje<br>uThnubhayo ?<br>paune saat baje.            | What time did you get up this morning ?<br>At quarter to seven.           |
| 2. uThera ke garnubhayo ?<br>uThera chiyaa khaaē.                               | What did you do after getting up?<br>After getting up, I had tea.         |
| 3. chiyaa khaaepachhi ke<br>garnubhayo ?<br>chiyaa khaepachhi nepaali<br>paDhē. | What did you do after having tea ?<br>After having tea, I studied Nepali. |



4. tyaspachhi ke garnubhayo?  
bazaar gaē.
5. kina ?  
kinmel garna.

Then what did you do ?  
I went to the bazaar.  
Why ?  
To do shopping.

(c)

1. timiharu gaaūmaa kahile  
jaanchhau ?  
dui mahinaa pachhi jaanchhaū.
2. gaaūmaa gaera ke garchhau ?  
  
iskulmaa paDhaauchaū.
3. gaaūmaa kati baschhau ?  
  
dui barsha baschhaū.
4. gaaūmaa dui barsha base-  
pachhi ke garchhau ?  
ghar pharkanchhaū.

When are you going to go the  
village ?  
We're going after two months.  
What are you going to do in the  
village ?  
We're going to teach at the school  
How long are you going to stay in  
the village ?  
We'll stay for two years.  
After you stay there for two  
years, what are you going to do ?  
We'll go back home.

(d)

1. timi aaja diuso ke garchhau ?  
  
ma ek chhin nepaali paDhchhu.
2. nepaali paDhepachhi ke  
garchhau ?  
nepaali paDhepachhi chiTThi  
lekhchhu.
3. kaslaai chiThi lekhchhu ?  
mero saathilaai.

What are you going to do this  
afternoon ?  
I'm going to study Nepali for  
a while.  
What are you going to do after  
that ?  
I'm going to write a letter after  
studying Nepali.  
Who are you going to write to ?  
To my friend.

4. timro saathile timilaai chiTThi      Does your friend write to you ?  
 lekchha ki lekhdaina ni ?  
 hahile kahl lekchha.                      He writes sometimes.

### COMPREHENSION

hijo maaik khaanaa saanaa khaaera bajaarmaa gayo. usle bajaarbaaTa rāāgoko maasu, raksi ra aru chijbij kinera lyaayo. belukaa usko Deraamaa uskaa saathiharu aae. uniharule maasu ra raksi khaae. sabailaai rāāgoko maasu man paryo. khaae pachhi uniharule ek chhin gaph gare. raati das baje maaikkāābaaTa saathiharu aaphno Deraamaa gae. uniharu gaepachhi maaik sutyo.

### QUESTIONS-

1. maaik khaanaa khaaera kakaa gayo ?
2. usle bajaarbaaTa ke ke kinera lyaayo ?
3. belukaa usko Deraamaa ko ko aae ?
4. uniharule ke ke khaae ?
5. uniharulaai rāāgoko maasu man paryo ki man parena ?
6. khaepachhi uniharule ke gare ?
7. maaikkāābaaTa saathiharu kati baje gae ?
8. kahāā ?
9. uniharu gaepachhi maaikle ke garyo ?

### GRAMMAR NOTES

ma khaanchhu ra iskul jaanchhu.	I eat and go to school.
ma khaanchhu tyaspachhi iskul jaanchhu.	I eat and then go to school

The above two sentences are grammatically correct and are used to some extent but the 'era' and 'epachhi' forms are usually more frequent.

The above two sentences can also be written using 'era' and 'epachhi'.

ma khaaera iskul jaanchhu.
ma khaepachi iskul jaanchhu.

In general 'unu' and 'nu' of the verb roots are omitted and 'era' or epachhi are added to the end.

khaanu	khaa era	khaa epachhi
pakaa/unu	pakaa era	pakaa epachhi
li/nu	li era	li epachhi
sut/nu	sut era	sut epachhi

Note, however, that following verbs are irregular as they are in their past tense forms:

jaanu	gaera	gaepachhi
lagnu	lagera	lagepachhi
runu	roera	roepachhi
dhunu	dhoera	dhoepachhi

The difference between 'era' and 'epachi'. 'era' emphasizes action whereas 'epachi' emphasize time.

Study the following examples:

ma juttaa phukaalera mandir bhitra jaanchhu.	I take off my shoes before I go into a temple.
ghar pugera haat mukh dhoē.	After I arrived home, I washed my hands and face.
haami bhaat khaepachhi chiyaa khaadainau	We don't drink tea after meals.
sinemaa herepachhi paaTan gayaū.	We went to Patan after we watched the movies.

Though 'era' and 'epachhi' are frequently interchangeable, the distinction should be kept in mind.

u aaepachhi malaai bheTna bhannos.	Please tell him to see me when he comes.
---------------------------------------	---

The 'era' form is not correct in the above sentence

bajaarmaa gaera lyaannos.

Please go and get it from the market.

'epachhi' form is not correct here.

In addition to 'epachhi, there is the 'i, form which is also heard.

ma gharmaa gai, lugga pheri aaē.

I went home, changed clothes and then came.

bhaat khaai, lugaa dhoi, aaraam  
gari ani aaeko.

I had my meal, washed my clothes,  
rested and then came.

## LESSON 23

### VOCABULARY

ausadhi	medicine	daakTarlaai	to consult with the
bheTnu	to meet	dekhaunu	doctor
chinnu	to know, to recognize	kaam	job, work
DaakTar	doctor	ek paTak	once
dekhaunu	to show	pauDi khelnu	to swim
		sarkaari	official (Govt.)
		Thegaan	certain

### PART I

#### (a)

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. hijo kina aaunu bhaena ?<br>kaam thiyo.                   | Why didn't you come yesterday<br>I was busy.               |
| 2. ke kaam thiyo ?<br>ek janaa saathi bheTnu parne<br>thiyo. | What work did you have ?<br>I had to meet a friend of mine |
| 3. bheT bhayo ta ?<br>bhaena.                                | Did you meet him ?<br>No, I didn't.                        |
| 4. kina ?<br>u gharmaa thiena.                               | Why ?<br>He was not at home.                               |

#### (b)

- |   |                                       |
|---|---------------------------------------|
| 1. uhāālaai chinnuhunchha?<br>chindina.         | Have you met him ?<br>No, I haven't.  |
| 2. wahāā si.Di.o. hunuhunchha.<br>e, namaskaar. | He is the C.D.O.<br>Oh, I see. Hello. |

## PART II

### (a)

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. tapaaī yurop jaanubhaeko<br>chha ?<br>gaeko chhu.                                      | Have you been to Europe ?<br>Yes, I have.  |
| 2. kun kun deshmaa jaanu bhaeko<br>chha ?<br>belaayat, frans ra jarmanimaa<br>gaeko chhu. | Which countries have you been<br>to ?<br>I've been to Britain, France, and<br>Germany. |
| 3. narwemaa ni ?<br>narwemaa ta gaeko chhaina.  | How about Norway ?<br>I have'nt been to Norway.  |
| 4. swiDenmaa jaanu bhaeko chha<br>ta ?<br>swiDenmaa pani gaeko chhaina.                   | Have you been to Sweden ?<br>No, I haven't been to Sweden<br>either:                   |

### (b)

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. tapaaiko saathi kahāā chha ?<br>sinemaa herna gaeko chha.    | Where is your friend ?<br>He has gone to the movies.       |
| 2. usāga ko ko gaekaa chhan ?<br>usāga jim ra Tam gaekaa chhan. | Who has gone with him ?<br>Jim and Tom have gone with him. |
| 3. bil gaeko chhaina ?<br>ahā, gaeko chhaina.                   | Hasn't Bill gone ?<br>No, he hasn't.                       |

4. u kahāā gaeko chha ta ?  
ghumna gaeko chha.

Where has he gone ?  
He's gone for a walk.

1. bhaansaa garnubhayo ?  
ahā, khaaeko chhaina.

Did you eat ?  
No, I haven't.

2. kina ta ? eghaara baji sakyō.  
peT dukheko chha.

Why ? It's already eleven o'clock.  
I've some stomach trouble.

3. dishaa pani laageko chha ?  
laageko chha.

Do you have diarrhoea too ?  
Yes, I have.

4. ausadhi khaanubhayo ta ?  
khaaeko chhaina.

Did you take any medicine ?  
No, I haven't

(d)

1. timile Tamko Deraa dekhakaa  
chhau ?  
dekhako chhu.

Do you know where Tom lives ?

Yes, I do.

2. ek paTak usko Deraamaa  
jaauna. mero kaam chha.  
aaja bholi yahāā chhaina.  
pokharaa gaeko chha.

Let's go to his apartment once  
I've some business with him.  
He's not here these days.  
He's gone to Pokhara.

3. kahile aaūchha ta ?  
Thegaan chhaina.

When will he be back ?  
It's not certain.

4. sarkaari kaammaa gaeko ho ki  
kyaa ho ?  
hoina, bidaamaa.

Has he gone there on official  
business ?  
No, he's on vacation.

#### COMPREHENSION—

das baji sakyō tara raam ahilesamma uTheko chhaina. aaja shanibaar ho tyaskaaran uslaai iskul jaanu pardaina. usko bhaai

gopaal bihaana sabera i uThera saathiharusaga pauDi khelna baalaaju gayo. ek ghanTaa pauDi khelera gopaal ghara pharkyo. gharmaa aera usle aaphno aamaasaga sodhyo, “daai ta koThaamaa hunuhunna, kahāa jaanu bhayo ?” usko aamaale bhaannubhayo, “uslaai rughaa laageko chha, tyaskaaran DaakTarlaai dekhaauna gaeko chha ”

## QUESTIONS—

1. raam uThyo ?
2. aaja uslaai kina iskul jaanu pardaina ?
3. usko bhaai uThera kahaa gayo ?
4. kina ?
5. ko sāga ?
6. u kati ghanTaa pauDi khelera ghara pharkyo ?
7. gharmaa aera usle aamaasāga ke sodhyo ?
8. aamaale ke bhannubhayo ?

## GRAMMAR NOTES

### 1 Conjugation of PRESENT PERFECT TENSE

#### a) With INTRANSITIVE VERB (Those which don't take objects)

PRONOUN	AFFIRMATIVE	NEGATIVE
ma	gaeko chhu	gaeko chhaina
tā	gaeko chhas	gaeko chhainas
u	gaeko chha	gaeko chhaina
haami	gaekaa chhaū	gaekaa chhainaū
timi	gaekaa chhau	gaekaa chhainau
uniharu	gaekaa chhan	gaekaa chhainan
tapaal	gaanu bhaeko chha	jaanu bhaeko chhaina



**b) With TRANSITIVE VERB (those which take objects)**

maile	khaaeko chhu	khaaeho chhaina
taile	khaaeko chhas	khaaeko chhainas
usle	khaaeko chha	khaaeko chhaina
haamile	khaaekaa chhaũ	khaaekaa chhaianaũ
timile	khaaekaa chhau	khaaekaa chhainau
uniharule	khaaehaa chhan	khaaekaa chhainan
tapaaile	khaanu bhaeho chha	khaanu bhaeko chhaina

**2. USAGES OF PRESENT PERFECT TENSE—**

**a) To describe Past activities without any time reference**

ma pokharaa gaeko chhu.	I've been to Pokhara.
maile french khaanaa khaaeko chhu.	I've eaten French food.
maile sekspiyarko kitaab paDheko chhu.	I've read Shakspeare.
usle malaai maddat gareko chha.	He's helped me.

**b) To describe the activities that are related up until the present tense.**

maile kahile pani raksi khaaeko chhaina.	I've never drunk raksi.
kamala aaeko chhaina.	Kamala hasn't come.
maile jimlaai bheTeho chhaina.	I've not met Jim.
maile ajhasamma kaam sakeko chhaina.	I haven't finished my work yet.

**c) Frequently to describe an activity which has some present relevance.**

baa jillaa panchhaayatamaa jaanubhaeko chha.	Father has gone to the District Panchayat office.
--	---

mero daai aaunu bhaeko chha.	My elder brother has come.
ma aaja raatbhari suteko chhaina.	I haven't slept all night.
malaai sancho chhaina.	I'm not feeling well.
uste raksi khaaeko chha.	He has drunk raksi (He is drunk).

d) There are also a few verbs in Nepali using this form when the actual tense coincides with the English Present Progressive.

tyo keTile raato lugaa lagaaeko chha.	That girl is wearing a red dress.
ghaam laageko chha.	The sun is shining.
paani pareko cha.	It's raining.

e) Note also the following:

maile uslaai chineko chhu.	I know him.
ma uslaai chinchhu.	I know him.
maile kehi gareko chhaina.	I haven't done anything.
maile uslaai kehi gareko chhaina.	I haven't done anything to him.

3. Si. Di. O/ Chief District Officer

## LESSON 24

### VOCABULARY

chaDhnu	to climb	khub	very
chhuTTi	vacation, holiday	majaa	fun
Dar laagnu	to be afraid	nikaai	very (emphatic)
ghumnu	to wander, to ramble	pohor (saal)	last year
haraaunu	to lose	prasiddha	famous
jukaa	leech, worm	samudra	sea
kinaar	beach, bank	sangrahaalaya	museum
		sundar	beautiful

(a)

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| <p>1. yo reDiyo tapaalle kahāā<br/>kinnubhayo ?<br/>hangkangmaa.</p>                             | <p>Where did you buy this radio ?<br/>In Hongkong.</p>  |
| <p>2. kahile kinnubhayo ?<br/>amerikaa baaTa nepaalmaa<br/>aaūdaakheri.</p>                      | <p>When did you buy it ?<br/>I bought it while I was coming to<br/>Nepal from the States.</p> |
| <p>3. amerikaa baaTa nepaalmaa<br/>aaūdaakheri byaangkak maa<br/>pani basnubhayo ?<br/>basē.</p> | <p>Did you stay in Bangkok also on<br/>your way to Nepal ?<br/>Yes, I did.</p>                |
| <p>4. byaangkak kasto rahechha ta ?<br/>raamro rahechha.</p>                                     | <p>How did you find Bangkok ?<br/>It's nice.</p>  |

(b)

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| <p>1. pohor saal tapaaI jomsom<br/>jaanubhayo, hoina ?<br/>gaē.</p> | <p>You went to Jomsom last year.<br/>didn't you ?<br/>Yes, I did.</p> |
|---|---|

2. kasari jaanubhayo ?  
jāādaa hawaai jahaajmaa ani  
aaūdaa hiDera.

How did you go ?

I went by plane and on the way  
back I walked.

3. baaTo kasto rahechha ?  
baaTo ta raamro rahechha tara  
paani pardaakheri jukaa laagdo  
rahechha.

How did you like the trail ?

The trail is nice but when it rains  
there are a lot of leeches.

4. jaana aauna jammaa kati din  
laagyo ?  
dash din.

How many days did you spend  
altogether ?

Ten days.

(c)

1. timi perismaa gaekaa chhau ?  
gaeko chhu.

Have you been to Paris ?

Yes, I have.

2. tyahāā kati din basyau ?  
dash-baarha din basē.

How long did you stay there ?

I stayed there for ten or twelve days.

3. tyahāā basdaakheri ke ke  
garyau ?  
sangrahaalayaharu herē,  
aaiphel Taawar maathi chaDhē  
ra sahar ghume.

What did you do while you were  
there ?

I went to many museums, climbed  
up to the Eiffel Tower and wande-  
red around the city.

4. aaiphel Taawarmaathi chaDh-  
daakheri Dar laagena ?  
laagena.

Weren't you scared while climbing  
up the Eiffel Tower ?

No, I wasn't.

(d)

1. yespaali dasaiko chuTTi  
hūdda timi kahāā gayau ?  
ma sri lankaamaa gaē.

Where did you go for the Dasain  
vacation this year ?

I went to Sri Lanka.

2. sri lankaa kasto rahechha ?  
nikkai ramaailo rahechha.

How did you like Sri Lanka ?

I found it very pleasant.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 3. sri lankaa keko laagi prasiddha<br>rahechha ?<br>samudrako sundar kinaar<br>haruko laagi. | What is Sri Lanka famous for ?<br><br>For its beautiful beaches.            |
| 4. tyahāā basdaakheri tapaaile<br>pauDi khelnubhayo ?<br>ho khelē. khub majaa bhayo.         | Did you go swimming while you<br>were there ?<br>Yes, I did. It was great ! |

(e)

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. aaja mero jholaa haraayo.<br>kahāā haraauunu bhayo ?                       | I lost my bag to-day.<br>Where did you lose it ?  |
| 2. bajaarbaaTa churoT kinera<br>pharkādaa haraayo.<br><br>paisaa pani thiyo ? | I lost it while I was coming back<br>from the bazaar after I bought<br>some cigarettes.<br>Did you have any money in it ! |
| 3. tin sae rupiyāā jati thiyo.<br><br>aru ke ke thiyo ni ?                    | Yes, there was about three hundred<br>rupees.<br>What else was there ?  |
| 4. euTaa khukuri ra duiTaa kitaab.<br>yo sunera dherai dukha laagyo.          | A khukuri and two books.<br>I'm really sorry to hear that.  |

#### GRAMMAR NOTES

1. '.....daa. as in 'jāādaa. 'pugdaa' is one of the imperfect participles implying 'while or when doing something ! In spoken Nepali, the word '.....kheri. is also used frequently giving the same meaning.

Study the following examples.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| a) sinemaa herdaakheri mero<br>āākhāa dukhyo | While I was watching the movie,<br>my eyes hurt. |
| b) kaam gardaakheri thakaai<br>laagyo.       | I got tired while I was working.                 |

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| c) bhakunDo kheldaakeheri usko khuTTaa bhāachchiyo. | He broke his legs when he was playing foot-baal. |
| d) baaTomaa hiDdaa maile uslaai bheTe.              | I met him when I was walking along the road.     |

Note that this form indicates a concurrent action sequence, i. e. one action occurring while another action is going on.

1. The negative of this 'while when doing' form can be used and interpreted like the following–

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| a) paisaa nahudaa usle ghaDi kinena.   | He didn't buy the watch because he didn't have money. |
| b) bhaneko namaandaa usle dukha paayo. | He suffered because he didn't listen (to us).         |
| c) ausadhi nakhaadaa rogi maryo.       | The patient died because he didn't take the medicine. |

Compare the last sentence with the following.

ausadhi nakhaadai rogi maryo. The patient died before he took the medicine.

Note: The form of this participle (as other imperfect participles) remains the same whatever the person, number or gender of the subject.

3. 'rahechha'– generally implies that the fact stated in the sentence has been recently discovered by the speaker.

kaThmanDu phohor rahechha. I found Kathmandu dirty.

The fact that 'Kathmandu is dirty' has just become known to the speaker. The negative form is 'rahenachha'

paani pardaakheri jukaa laagdo rahechha.	There are a lot of leeches when it rains (I have just found out that.....)
--	--

nepaali sikna gaarho rehenachha.

I found out that it's not difficult to learn Nepali.

minaale Tibeti boldo rahena chha.

Meena does not speak Tibetan. (I just found out that.....)

bhairahawaa ramaailo rahenachha.

Bhairahawa isn't pleasant (I just discovered that.....)

## LESSON 25

### VOCABULARY

bhoj	feast	maannu	to follow
bokaa	he goat	pahilo	first
chaaD	festival	pandhraū	fifteenth
chharlangai	clearly	pujaa	worship
dekhinu	to be seen	suninu	to be heard
dashaI	Durga puja Festival	Tikaa	red mark worn
dharma	religion		on the forehead
durgaa	the goddess who	Thulaa	superiors
	killed the buffalo	usobhae	if so, in that
	demon		case
kaaTnu	to cut		
kinabhane	because		
maanchhe	man		

### PART I

1. kati bajyo ?  
baara bajna laagyo.      What time is it ?  
It's almost twelve.
2. aaja kahāā khaana jaane  
bichaar chha ?  
'uniTi' maa jaawaū na.      Where were you thinking of eating to day ?  
Let's go to the Unity.
3. 'uniTi' kahāā nira parchha ?  
niu roDmaa ta ho ni.      Where is the Unity ?  
It's on New Road.
4. khaanaa kasto paainchha ni ?  
miTho paainchha. paani pani  
umaaleko dinchha.      What kind of food can you get there ?  
Good food and they also serve boiled water.
5. usobhae tyahl jaawaū.  
jaawaū.      Let's go there, then.  
Let's go.



## PART II

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. nepaalmaa b.b.c. reDio<br>suninchha ?<br>suninchha. belaayatmaa reDiyo<br>nepaal suninchha ? | Can you get the <b>BBC</b> in Nepal ?<br>(lit. Is the <b>BBC</b> heard in Nepal ?)<br>Yes, you can. Can you get Radio<br>Nepal in England ? |
| 2. sunidaina. tapaa! b.b.c.<br>sunnuhunchha ?<br>kahile kahī sunchhu.                           | No you can't. Do you listen to the<br><b>B.B.C.</b> ?<br>Yes, I do sometimes.   |
| 3. dheraijaso ke sunnuhunchha?<br><br>dheraijaso reDiyo nepaal nai<br>sunchhu.                  | What do you listen to most of the<br>time ?<br>I listen to Radio Nepal most of<br>the time.   |
| 4. masko reDiyo ni ?<br>masko reDiyo kahilepani<br>sundina.                                     | How about Radio Moscow ?<br>No, I never listen to that.   |
| 5. kina ?<br>kinabhane ma rusi bhaashaa<br>bujhdina.  | Why ?<br>Because I don't understand Russian   |

### (b)

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. timro DeraabaaTa himaal<br>raamrosanga dekhinchha ?<br>ahā, raamrosanga dekhidaina.<br>timro gharbaaTa ni ? | Can you see the Himalayas well<br>from your apartment ?<br>No I can't see them well.<br>How about from your house ? |
| 2. mero ghar baaTa ta chharlangai<br>dekhinchha.<br>kun kun himaal dekhinchhan ?                               | I can see them very clearly from<br>my house.<br>Which peaks can you see ?  |
| 3. ganesh ra laamTaang dekhin-<br>chhan.<br>sagarmaathaa ni ?  | Ganesh and Lamtang.<br><br>How about Everest ?  |
| 4. sagarmaathaa ta dekhidaina.   | No, I can't see Everest.  |

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. nepaalmaa kun kun dharma<br>maaninchaa ?<br>hindu ra buddha dharma<br>maaninchha.              | What religions are followed in<br>Nepal ?<br>Hinduism and Buddhism.  |
| 2. aru dharma maanidaina ?<br><br>maaninchha, tara dherai<br>thorai maatra.                       | Aren't there any other religions<br>followed ?<br>Yes, but not much. |
| 3. sabbhandaa dherai kun chaanI<br>maaninchha ?<br>hindu dharma sab bhandaa dherai<br>maaninchha. | Which one is followed the most ?<br>Hinduism is followed the most.   |
| 4. tapaal kun dharma maannu<br>hunchha ni ?<br>ma hindu dharma maanchhu.                          | What's your religion ?<br>I'm a Hindu.                               |

### COMPREHENSION—

dashai hinduharuko sab bhandaa Thulo chaaD ho. yo chaaaD  
akTobar mahinaamaa prachha. yeslaai pandara dinsamma manaain-  
chha. pahilo dindekhi pandharaa dinsamma nai durgaako pujaa garin-  
chha ra dherai bokaa kaaTinchhan. Tikaa dashaiko sabbhandaa  
Thulo din ho. yes dinmaa aphubhandaa Thulaa maanchhe baaTa  
Tikaa lagaainchha. yes chaaD bhari nai hinduharu bhoj khaanchhan.

### QUESTIONS:—

1. hinduharuko sab bhandaa Thulo chhaD kun ho ?
2. yo kun mahinnamaa parchha ?
3. yo chaaD kati din samma manaainchha ?
4. yes belaamaa kun debiko pujaa garinchha ?

5. kati dinsamma ?
6. yes belaamaa ke kaaTinchha ?
7. dashaiko sabbhandaa Thulo din kun ho ?
8. yes dinmaa ke lagaainchha ?
87. kasbaaTa ?
10. yo chhaD bhari hinduharu ke garchhan ?

## GRAMMAR NOTES

1. 'bajna laaguu.- Its a compound verb formed from two roots 'bajou. and 'laagou.

baarha bajna laagyo.	It's almost 12 o'clock.
u jaana laagyo.	He is about to go.
jahaaj uDna laagyo.	The plane is about to take-off.
garmi huna laagyo.	The hot season is coming.

2. 'parchha' is used here to specify the time of an event.

yo chaD akTobar mahinaamaa parchha.	This festival falls in the month of October.
--	---

Study the following examples:

a) yo kitaabko dash rupiyāā parchha.	This book costs ten rupees.
b) ilaam purbamaa parchha.	Ilam lies in the east.
c) yahāā dherai paani parchha.	It rains a lot here.
d) rughaa laagdaa aaspirin kaaanu parchha.	You should take aspirin when you have cold.

3. pahilo, pandhraū are ordinal numbers.

study the following—

pahilo	first	teshro	third
doshro	second	chautho	fourth

paachau	fifth	nawau	ninth
chhaiTau	sixth	dasau	tenth
saatau	seventh	egharaau	eleventh
aaThau	eighth	baaraau	twelfth

4. (a) 'suninchha.', 'dekhinchha.' are impersonal forms of the personal verb 'sannu.' 'dekhnu'. These verb forms can best be translated by an English passive.

yahaaBaaTa pokaraa dekhinchha. Pokara is seen from here.

dinko aaTh ghanTaa kaam garinchha. Eight hours of work is done every day.

- b) Some transitive verbs and their impersonal forms—

sannu—	to hear	suninchha—	is heard.
maannu	to celebrate	maaninchha—	is celebrated.
garnu—	to do	garinchha	is done.
paDhaaunu—	to teach	paDhaainchha—	is taught
dekhaaunu—	to show	dekhaainchha—	is shown
dinu—	to give	diinchha	is given

Note suffix 'i' is added in all the impersonal forms in the above examples.

## LESSON 126

### VOCABULARY

bigyaan	science	parsi	day after tommorrow
gaai	cow	phursad	free time
khasi	castrated male goat	siddhinu	to be finished
krishi	agriculture		

### PART I

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. bhannos.<br>malaai TikaT chaahiyo.                            | Yes, please.<br>I need a ticket.   |
| 2. kahaako lagi ?<br>pokharaako.                                 | Where for ?<br>For Pokhara.  |
| 2. kahileko lagi ni ?<br>bholiko lagi.                           | For when ?<br>For tomorrow.  |
| 4. bholiko TikaT ta siddhiyo.<br><br>usobhae parsikolaagi dions. | All tickets for tomorrow<br>have been sold (lit. are finished)<br>In that case, give me one for the<br>day after tomorrow. |
| 5. ek chhin parkhanos, hai.<br>hawas.                            | Please wait a minute, okay ?<br>Okay.  |

### PART II

(a)

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. amerikaa hūdaa tapaai ke<br>garnuhunthyo ?<br>kalejmaa paDhthe. | When you were in the States<br>What did you use to do ?<br>I used to go to college. |
| 2. ke paDhnuhunthyo ?<br>bigyaan paDhthe.                          | What did you (used to) study ?<br>I studied science.                                |

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 3. nepaali pani paDhnuhunthyo<br>ki ?<br>paDhdinathē.                     | Did you use to study Nepali<br>also ?<br>No, I didn't.                                |
| 4. kalejmaa paDhdaa sinemaa<br>pani hernuhunthyo ?<br>hahile kahī herthē. | Did you use to go to movies<br>while you were in college ?<br>I used to go sometimes. |

(b)

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. amerikaamaa tapaaI keko maasu<br>khaanuhunthyo ?<br>gaaiko maasu khaanthē.     | What kind of meat did you use<br>to eat in the States ?<br>I used to eat beef. |
| 2. khasiko maasu pani khaanu<br>hunthyo' ?<br>khaannathē.                         | Did you (use to) eat goat meat<br>also ?<br>No, I didn't.                      |
| 3. kina ni ?<br>amerikaamaa khasiko maasu<br>paaldaina.                           | Why not ?<br>Goat meat isn't available in the<br>States.                       |
| 4. wahāā amerikaamaa keko<br>maasu khaanuhunthyo ?<br>gaaiko maasu khaanuhunthyo. | What meat did he use to eat in<br>the States ?<br>He used to eat beef.         |

(c)

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. dui mahinaa aghi timi kahaā<br>thiyau ?<br>ma jaapaanmaa thiē. | Where were you two months ago ?<br><br>I was in Japan.     |
| 2. jaapaanmaa ke garthyau ?<br><br>ma paDhthē.                    | What did you (use to) do in<br>Japan ?<br>I used to study. |

3. ke paDhtheu ?  
krishi paDhthē.

What did you (use to) study ?  
I used to study agriculture.

4. u ke paDhthyo ?  
u krishi paDhthyo.

What did he (use to) study ?  
He used to study agriculture.

### COMPREHENSION—

jimko ghar amerikaako kyaaliphorniyaa raajyamaa parchha. u nepaal aaeko dui mahinaa pani bhaeko chhaina tara u raamrai nepaali bolchha. amerikaamaa hūdaa u kalejmaa paDhthyo. amerikaamaa u khasiko maasu khaadainathyo kinabhane tyahāā khasiko maasu paaidaina. kalejmaa paDhdaa jim kahile kāāhi bhali bal ra ping pang khelthyo tara phuTbal kheldainathyo kinabhane uslaai phuTbal khelna man pardaina. yahāā aaepachhi usle kunaipani khel kheleko chhaina. uslaai khelne phursad pani hudaina. uslaai dinko chaar ghanTaa nepaali siknu parchaa ani aru pani kaam garnu parchha.

### QUESTIONS—

1. jimko ghar kun raajyamaa parchha ?
2. u nepaal aaeko dui mahinaā bhayo ?
3. u nepaali kasto bolchha ?
4. amerikaamaa u ke garthyo ?
5. u khasiko maasu khaanthyo ?
6. kina ?
7. u kun kun khel khelthyo ?
8. phuTbal ni ?
9. yahāā aaepachhi usle kun khel kheleko chha ?
10. kina ?
11. uslaai dinko kati ghanTaa nepaali siknu parchha ?
12. uslaai aru pani kaam garnu parchha ?

1. 'bhanos' literally 'say' is sometimes used to ask people what they want. It can be roughly translated as 'what do you want ?' or 'May I help you ?'

2. Conjugation of PAST HABITUAL- **khaanu-** to eat

PRONOUNS	POSITIVE	NEGATIVE	ALTERNATIVE NEG
ma	khaanthē	khaannathē	khaadinathē
tā	khaanthis	khaannathis	khaadinathis
u	khaanthyo	khaannathyo	khaadainathyo
haami	khaanthyaū	khaannathyaū	khaadainathyaū
timi	khaantheu	khaannatheu	khaadainatheu
uniharu	khaanthe	khaannathe	khaadainathe.
tapaai	khaanuhunthyo	khaanuhunnathyo	khaanuhudainathyo

3. The 'thē' form is used to express a repetitive or habitual activity in the past. It's usually used with the adverbs denoting frequency such as 'always' 'usually' in the morning's etc. and with the "daakheri" form

ma briTenmaa basdaa sadhai sup khaanthē.	I always used to have soup when I was in Britain.
aaitabaar charchmaa jaanthē.	I used to go to church on Sundays.
beluki beluki ghumna jaanthē.	I used to go for a walk in the evenings.

4. 'ai' as in 'ramrai' added to the adjective diminishes the quality of the adjective. so 'raamrai. converts 'raamro' into meaning 'fairly good'

Thik	—	Thikai
sancho	—	sanchai
Thulo	—	Thulai



## LESSON 27

### VOCABULARY

baDhi	more	lugaa	cloth, clothes, dress
baliyo	strong	maddhye	among, between
bataaunu	to tell, narrate	nyaano	warm
bidyaartha	student	pugnu	to arrive, to suffice
bishaya	subject	roknu	to stop
itihaas	history	Thik	right, exact
jor	pair	Thaaũ	place

### PART I

- 1 e daai ! pokharaa jaane basko      Hello ! (lit. Hey, brother) where  
TikaT kahāa paainchha ?      can I get a ticket for the bus to  
Pokhara ?  
yahi paainchha.      You can get them here.
2. malaai bholiko laagi duiTaa      Please give me two tickets for  
TikaT dinos ta.      tomorrow.  
kati bajeko basmaa jaane tapaai? Which bus do you want to take ?
3. pahilo bas kati baje jaancha ?      What time does the first bus leave ?  
Thik saat baje.      At seven o'clock sharp.
4. pokharaa kati baje pugchha ni ?      What time does it arrive in  
Pokhara ?  
tin bajetira.      Around three o'clock.
5. baaToma rokchha ki rokdaina?      Does it stop on the way or not ?  
ek dui Thaaũmaa rokchha.      It stops at one or two places.

## PART II

### (a)

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. kaapimaa tapaaiko naam<br>leknons. tapaaile kasko naam<br>lekhnu bhayo ?<br>maile mero naam lekhē.   | Please write your name in your<br>notebook. Whose name did you<br>write ?<br>I wrote my name.        |
| 2. aba mero naam lehnos.<br>tapaaile kasko naam lekhnu<br>bhayo ?<br>maile tapaaiko naam lekhē.   | Now write my name.<br>Whose name did you write ?<br>I wrote your name.                               |
| 3. mero naam lekhnubhandaa<br>pahile tapaaile kasko naam<br>lekhnubhayo ?<br>tapaaiko naam lekhnubhandaa<br>pahile maile mero naam lekhē.             | Whose name did you write<br>before writing my name ?<br>I wrote my name before writing<br>your name. |
| 4. mero naam lekhnubhandaa<br>pahile wahāale kasko naam<br>lekhnubhayo ?<br>tapaaiko naam lekhnu bhandaa<br>pahile wahāale aaphno naam<br>lekhnubhayo | Whose name did he write before<br>writing my name ?<br>He wrote his name before writing<br>yours.    |

### (b)

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. nepaal aaunu bhandaa pahile<br>timi kahaa thiyau ?<br>amerikaamaa thiē. | Where were you before coming to<br>Nepal ?<br>I was in the States. |
| 2. amerikaamaa ke gartheu ?<br><br>paDhthē.                                | What did you use to do in the<br>States ?<br>I used to study.      |
| 3. kun bishaya paDhtheu ?<br><br>dharma ra itihaas.                        | What subject did you (use to)<br>study ?<br>Religion and history.  |

4. dharma ra itihāas maddhye      Of the two subjects, which do you  
timilāai kun bishaya baDhi man like better ?  
parchha ?  
malāai dharma baDhi man      I like religion better.  
parchha.

#### COMPREHENSION—

nepaal aaunu bhandaa pahile ma iskaTlyaanDmaa thiē. tyahāā ma euTaa kalejmaa paDhthē. ek din maile euTaa nepaali bidyarthilāai bheTē. usle malāai nepaalko baaremaa bataayo. usko kurāa sunera malāai nepaalmaa aana man laagyo. iskaTlyaanDmaa pani pahaaDharu chhan. tara nepaalkaa jati aglāa chāainan. iskaTlyaanDmaa hūdaa pani ma bidaamaa pahaaD chaDhthē. nepaalbaaTa pharkanu bhandaa pahile euTaa pahaaD chaDhne bichaar chha. pahaaD chaDhnako laagi baliyo juttaa ra nyaano lugaa chaahinchha. tyasaile maile ek jor baliyo buT ra nyaano lugaa lyaaeko chhu. iskaTlyaanDmaa dherai jaso hiū parchha. hiū pardaa ma sadhai mero buT lagaauthē. kaaThmaanDumaa bhane ma aaepachhi ek paTak pani hiū pareko chhaina.

#### QUESTIONS—

1. nepaal aaunubhandaa pahile tapāai kahāā hunuhunthyō ?
2. tyahāā tapāai ke garnu hunthyō ?
3. ek din tapāalle kaslāai bheTnubhayō ?
4. usle tapāallaai keko baaremaa bataayo ?
5. usko kurāa sunera tapāallaai ke garna man laagyo ?
6. iskaTlyaanDmaa pahaaDharu chhan ki chhainan ?
7. ti pahaaDharu nepaalkaa jati aglāa chhan ?
8. iskaTlyaanDmaa hūdaa pani tapāai pahaaD chaDhunuhunthyō ?

9. nepaalbaaTa pharkanubhandaa pahile tapaaiko ke garne bichhaar chha ?
10. pahaaD chaDhnako laagi ke ke chhahinchha ?
11. tapaaile ke ke lyaaunu bhaeko chha ?
12. iskaTlyaanDmaa hiüdmaa kattiko hiü parchha ?
13. hiü pardaa tapaaĩ ke lagaaunuhunthyo ?
14. tapaaĩ aaepahhi kaTh.naanDumaa hiü pareko chha ki chhaina ?

## LESSON 28

### VOCABULARY

baaremaa	about	tyati belaa	at that <del>time</del>
bhaaDaa	fare, rent	yasko	it's, of this
tyas din	that day		

### PART I

1. hiyo diūso tapaal gharmaa  
hunuhunnathyo ni. kahāā  
jaanubhaeko thiyo ? You weren't at your house yesterday afternoon. Where had you gone ?  
kati baje ? tapaal mero At what time ? Did you come to  
gharmaa aaunubhaeko thiyo ra ? my place ?
2. ho, ma chaar baje tapaalko  
gharmaa gaeko thiē. Yes, I was there at 4 p. m.  
e ! ma tyati belaa sinemaa Oh ! I was at the movies then.  
herna gaeko thiē.
3. kun sinemaa herna jaanu Which movie had you gone to ?  
bhaeko thiyo ?  
'War and Peace' herna gaeko I had gone to see 'War and Peace' ?  
thiē. . .
4. sinemaa kati baje siddhiyo ? When was the movie over ?  
chha baje siddhiyo . At six.
5. tapaal ghar pugdaa kati bajeko What time was it when you arrived  
thiyo ? home ?  
ghar pugdaa saat bajeko thiyo. It was seven when I got home.

### PART II

(a)

1. tapaa haru asti kahāā jaanu Where had you gone the day  
bhaeko thiyo ? before yesterday ?  
haami pokharaa gaekaa thiyau. We had gone to Pokhara.

2. tapaaIharu pokharaamaa  
hādaa maachhaapuchhre  
dekhieko thiyo ?

ahā dekhieko thiena.

3. kina ?  
tyas din dherai baaklo baadal  
laageko thiyo.

4. paani pani pareko thiyo ?  
paani ta pareko thiena.

Was Machapuchhre out while you  
were in Pokhara ?

No, it wasn't.

Why ?  
It was thickly clouded that day.

Was it also raining ?  
No, it wasn't.

(b)

1. yahāā aaunubhandaa pahile  
nepaalko baaremaa sunekaa  
thiyau ?  
ali ali suneko thiē.

Had you heard about Nepal before  
you came here ?

Yes, I had heard about it a little.

2. nepaalko baaremaa kunai  
kitaab paDhekaathiyau ?  
euTaa maatra paDheko thiē.

Had you read any books on  
Nepal ?

Yes, I had read one.

3. kun kitaab paDhekaa thiyau ?  
Toni heganko 'Nepal' paDheko  
thiē.

Which one ?

Toni Hagen's 'Nepal'.

4. biTako 'People of Nepal'  
paDhekaa thienau ?  
ahā ! tyo ta paDheko thiina.

Handn't you read Bista's 'People  
of Nepal' ?

No, I had not.

5. mero bichaarmaa timile tyo  
kitaab paDhnu parchha.  
hunchha, paDchhu.

I'd recommend you to read the  
book.

O. K. I'll read it.

## COMPREHENSION

gaeko haptaa ma pokharaa gaeko thiē. raam ra shyaam pani ma  
sanga gaekaa thie. kaaThmanDubaaTa pokharaasamma basko bhaaDaa

pachchis rupiyāā rahechha. baaTo raamro rahechha. malaai pokharaa asaadhyai ramaailo laagyo. ma pahile pokharaa kahilepani gaeko thiina tara yasko baaremaa suneko thiē. kaaThmandDubaaTa pokharaa jhanDai chha ghanTaa laagdo rahechha.

## QUESTIONS

1. gaeko haptaa tapaai kahāā kahāā jaanu bhaeko thiyo ?
2. tapaaisanga ko ko gaekaa thie ?
3. tyahāāsamma basko bhāaDaa kati rahechha ?
4. baaTo kasto rahechha ?
5. tapaallaai pokharaa kasto laagyo ?
6. tapaai pahile pani pokharaa jaanubhaeko thiyo ?
7. pokharaako baaremaa sunnubhaeko thiyo ta ?
8. pokharaa pugna kati ghanTaa laagdo rahechha ?

## GRAMMAR NOTES

### 1. Conjugation of the PAST PERFECT TENSE

PRONOUNS	AFFIRMATIVE	NEGATIVE
ma	gaeko thiē	gaeko thiina
tā	gaeko thiis	gaeko thiinas
u	gaeko thiyo	gaeko thiena
haami	gaekaa thiyau	gaekaa thienau
timi	gaekaa thiyau	gaekaa thienau
uniharu	gaekaa thie	gaekaa thienan
tapaai	jaanu bhaeko thiyo	jaanu bhaeko thiena

Note the 'kaa' form with plural pronouns timi, haami and uniharu. In spoken Nepali, however, this distinction is not always made.

2. a.) The 'eko thiyo' form is very common with the form 'hunubhandaa pahile'.

maile nepaal aaunu bhandaa pahile nepaali sikeko thiina.	Before coming to Nepal, I hadn't learned Nepali.
---	---

- ii. kaaThmaanDu aaunubhandaa pahile usle moTar dekheko thiena. Before coming to Kathmandu, he had never seen a car.
- iii. Dhokaa laaunu bhandaa pahile maile sãcho lieko thie. Before locking the door, I had taken the key.
- iv. aphis baaTa niskanu bhandaa pahile batti nibhaaeko thiẽ. Before leaving the office, I had turned off the light.

b. This form is often used in a situation when you want to say something in a kind of report or when you want to recall yours or someone's past life.

baale malaai yahI iskulmaa	My father had told me to study
paDhna bhannu bhaeko thiyo.	in this school.
maile haai iskulmaa	I had studied a little
aliali sanskrit paDheko thiẽ.	Sanskrit in high school.
u 1950 maa janmeko thiyo.	He was born in 1950.
wahãã paakistaan pani jaanu	He had also been to Pakistan.
bhaeko thiyo.	

c. This form is also commonly used with a verb daa (kheri) form:—

ma asti aaudaa timi utekaa	When I came over to your house the
thiyau.	day before yesterday you were
	sleeping
raam aaudaa kohipani uTheko	When Ram came over, nobody
thiena.	was up.
gopaalkãã jããdaa usko bahini	When we got over to Gopal's
Dhokaamaa ubhieki thii.	his sister was standing in the door
	way.

d. This form is also used to describe an activity of past relevance.

a) taapaaI hìjo aaunu bhayo ?	Did you come over yesterday ?
aaina.	No, I didn't.
kina ?	Why ?



Taauko dukheko thiyo.	I had a headache.
b) jim nidaaeko thiena.	Jim wasn't asleep.
c) phalphul kuheko thiyo.	The fruit was rotten.
d) hiyo baadal laageko thiyo.	It was cloudy yesterday.

This 'eko thiyo' form as described above can be used in a variety of situations not necessarily always coinciding with the English Past Perfect Tenses. Further study of the text and exposure to Nepali in conversation should reinforce the proper usage of this form.

### 3. Usage of rahechha, rahenachha. (also see lesson 24–Notes 3)

#### a) Noun rahechha

miThaai rahechha–Hey, its a piece of candy.

#### b) Noun Location rahechha

mero bhaai iskulmaa rahechha. Hey, my brother is still in school.

#### 1. verb rahenachha

paaaine rahenachha.	Hey, it's not available.
yahāā biyar paaaine rahachha.	Hey, you can get beer here.

Note: 'rahechha' and 'rahenachha' are often contracted to 'raicha, and rainachha'  
Study the following examples–

usko tinwaTaa chhoraa rahechhan.	I found that he has three sons.
tarakaari piro rahechha.	Oh! the curry is hot.
rāāgoko maasu miTho hune	Buffalo meat is tasty (I just found
rahachha.	out).
mero kalam jholaamaa rahechha	I found that my pen was in my bag.
mero saathi pani aaeko rahechha.	My friend has also come.

This structure is quite frequent in Nepali. It is used when the speaker suddenly becomes aware of something or has found out something he didn't know before. compare- 'rahechha' with 'hunchha'–

kaaThmanDumaa aalu sasto  
hunchha.

Potato is cheap in Kathmandu.  
(always so, compared to other places)

kaaThmanDumaa aalu sasto  
rahechha.

I see that potatoes are cheap in Kathmandu. (It is a recent discovery for the speaker)

## LESSON 29

### VOCABULARY

bechnu	to sell	kattiko	how much
bekaar	jobless, useless	khajnu	to look for
bhiD	crowd	kisim	kind, type, sort
bideshi	foreigner	kohi	some
dikkalaagnu	to be bored	patrikaa	newspaper
gāājaa	marijuana	talab	salary
gaph garnu	to gossip	ustai	just like that

### PART I

1. nepaal aaunubhandaa pahile      Jim ! Where were you before you  
  tapaal kahāā hunuhunthyo, jim?    came to Nepal ?  
  ma amerikaamaa thiē.                I was in the U. S.
2. tapaal ke gardai hunuhunthyo?      What were you doing then ?  
  ma bekaar thiē. kaam khojdai-      I was unemployed. I was looking  
  thiē.                                        for a job.
3. kun kisimko kaam khojdai              What kind of job were you  
  hunuhunthyo ?                            looking for ?  
  jasto paayo ustai                        Whatever was available.
4. bekaar basdaakheri tapaaīlaai        Were not you bored when you  
  dikka laagdainathyo ?                    were without job ?  
  ekdam dikka laagthyo.                  I was very bored.

### PART II

1. hijo belukaa tapaal ke gardai        What were you doing yesterday  
  hunuhunthyo ?                            evening ?  
  ma nayāā saDakmaa ghumdai        I was cruising around New Road.  
  thiē.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 2. tapaaiko saathi ni ?<br>u pani masangai ghumdaithiyo.   | How about your friend ?<br>He was also cruising around with me.                                |
| 3. tyatibelaa tyahāā maanisharuko<br>kattiko bhiD thiyo ?<br>nikai bhiD thiyo.                             | How big was the crowd of people there at that time ?<br>It was really crowded.                 |
| 4. tiniharu ke garirahekaa thie ?<br>kohi patrikaa kinirahekaa thie;<br>dherai jaso gaph garirahekaa thie. | What was everyone doing ?<br>Some were buying newspapers but most of them were just gossiping. |
| 5. ghar pharkādaa kati bajeko thiyo ?<br>nau bajisakeko thiyo.   | What was the time when you got back home ?<br>It was already nine o'clock.                     |

(b)

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. timro keTi saathi ahile kahāā chha ?<br>iraanmaa.   | Where is your girl friend these days ?<br>In Iran.  |
| 2. iraanmaa paDhiraheko chha ?<br>hoina, paDhiraheko chhaina.                                      | Is she going to school there ?<br>No, she isn't.  |
| 3. kaam gariraheko chha ta ?<br>ho, angreji paDhaaune kaam gariraheko chha.                        | Is she working there ?<br>Yes, she is teaching English.                                       |
| 4. iraanmaa angreji paDhaaudaa ta<br>nikkai paisaa dinchha, hoina ?<br>ho, usko talab raamro chha. | I guess they pay pretty well when you teach English in Iran ?<br>Yes, she gets a good salary. |

(c)

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. Tam ke gari raheko chha ?<br>u sutiraheko chha. | What is Tom doing ?<br>He is sleeping. |
|--|--|

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 2. kina ? uslaai sancho chhaina?<br>ho, usko peT dukheko chha.                           | Why ? Is he sick ?<br>Yes, he has a stomach ache.   |
| 3. usle peT dukheko ausadhi<br>khāādai chha ?<br>kunni ? hijo samma ta khaadai<br>thiyo. | Is he taking medicine for his<br>stomach ache ?<br>He was taking some up until<br>yesterday, but I don't know about<br>today. |
| 4. ke ausadhi khāādai thiyo<br>tapaal laai thaahaa chha ?<br>tyo ta thaahaa chhaina.     | Do you know what medicine he<br>was taking ?<br>That I don't know.  |

### COMPREHENSION—

raam ra usko bhaai ek din basantapur tira ghumna gae. raam ko bhaai pahile basantapur gaeko thiena. basantapurmaa uniharule dherai kisimkaa maanisharu dekhe. kohi phalphul bechirahekaa thie, kohi bideshiharulaai puraano chijbij bechirahekaa thie. ek chin pachhi raam ra usko bhaai hanumaan Dhokaatira gae. hunumaan Dhokaa najikaiko euTaa mandirmaa duijanaa maanchhe gaajaa khaairahakaa thie. uniharuko kapaal laamo thiyo ra lugaa rangi changi. raam ra usko bhaai dubai laai ti maanchhe man parenan.

### QUESTIONS

1. raam ra usko bhaai kahaa ghumna gae ?
2. raamko bhaai pahile basantapur gaeko thiyo ?
3. uniharule tyahaa ke dekhe ?
4. ti maanisharu ke garirahakaa thie ?
5. ek chhin pachhi raam ra usko bhaai kataatira gae ?
6. mandirmaa uniharule ke dekhe ?
7. uniharu ke garirahakaa thie ?
8. uniharukaa kapaal ra lugaa kastaa thie ?
9. uniharulaai ti maanchhe man paryo ?

## 1. Conjugation of Past Progressive.

garnu

to do.

### Affirmative

ma gardaithië.

I was doing.

tā gardaithiis.

You were doing

u gardaithiyo.

He was doing.

haami gardaithiyaū.

We were doing.

timi gardaithiyau.

You were doing.

uniharu gardaithie.

They were doing.

tapaaI gardai hunuhunthyo.

You were doing.

### Alternative Affirmative Form

ma gariraheko thië.

I was doing.

tā gariraheko thiis.

You were doing.

u gariraheko thiyo.

He was doing.

haami garirahekaa thiyaū.

We were doing.

timi garirahekaa thiyau.

You were doing.

uniharu garirahekaa thie.

They were doing.

tapaaI garirahanubhaeko thiyo.

You were doing.

### Negative

ma gariraheko thiina.

I was not doing.

tā gariraheko thiinas.

You were not doing.

u gariraheko thiena.

He was not doing.

haami garirahekaa thienaū.

We were not doing.

timi garirahekaa thienau.

You were not doing.

uniharu garirahekaa thienan.

They were not doing.

tapaaI garirahanubhaeko thiena

You were not doing.

You are advised to learn the first Affirmative Form. The alternative affirmative form is also heard but not as often as the first. The negative of the Alternative Form is also sometimes used but note the following when negating something in the first Past Progressive Form:

timi paDhdai thiyau ?

–Were you reading ?

hoina, ma saathisita kuraa  
gardaithië.

–No, I was talking to my friend.

Instead of a negative form being applied, the person replying first denies that he was doing the activity asked in the question by saying 'hoina' or 'chhaina' and then says what he was actually doing in the first affirmative form of the past progressive tense.

2. The form 'eko chha' is translated into English in many ways, Study the following examples.

jim suteko chha.  
aaja baadal laageko chha.  
uniharu bhokaaekaa chhan.  
dhaan paakeko chhaina.  
jen hissi pareko chha.  
mero Taauko dukheko chha.  
mero ghaDi bigreko chha.  
mero ghaDi haraakeko chha.  
paaTh siddhieko chhaina.  
ainaa phuTeko chha.  
koTmaa raato rang laageko chha.  
tapaaiko lugaamaa dhulo  
laageko chha.  
u nidaakeko chha.

usko kukur mareko chhaina.  
sinemaa shuru bhakeko chhaina.

–Jim is sleeping.  
–It is cloudy today.  
–They are hungry.  
–The rice is not ripe.  
–Jane is cute.  
–I have a headache.  
–My watch is broken.  
–My watch is lost.  
–The lesson is not finished.  
–The mirror is broken.  
–There is red color in the jacket.  
–Your clothes are dirty.

He is sleeping (He has fallen asleep)

–His dog is not dead.  
–The film hasn't started.

Study the following examples where the form 'eko' is used as an adjective.

taareko aalu – fried potato.  
kuheko phalphul – rotten fruit  
hissi pareko keTi – cute girl.

phuTeko ainaa – broken mirror  
bigreko ghaDi – broken watch

## LESSON 30

### VOCABULARY

Khet baari	—	field, farm
khojnu	—	to look for
pakaaunu	—	to cook
samaaj shaastra	—	sociology

### PART I

(a)

1. namaste ! dherai bhayo bheT nabhaeko !  
namaste ! ho, dheraibhayo. Hello ! I haven't seen you for a long time.  
Yes, it has been long.
2. aajabholi ke garirahekaa chhau? What are you doing these days ?  
kehipani gariraheko chhaina. I am not doing anything  
kam khojdai chhu. I am looking for a job.
3. kasto kaam garna sakchhau ? What kind of work can you do ?  
khaanaa pakaune, ghar sapha Cooking, house cleaning.  
garne.
4. ek mahinaako kati linchhau ? How much do you want a month?  
pahile kaam gardaa mahinaako It was two hundred a month  
dui sae thiyo. when I worked last time.
5. ahile pani tyatimaa nai garchhau? Would you work for the same now  
also ?  
garchhu. Yes. I would.
6. usobhae bholidekhi makāā auu. If so, come to my place starting  
tomorrow.  
hunchha, ma aaūchhu. O. kay, I will come.



## PART II

(b)

1. tapaalko bhaai aaja bholi      Where is your younger brother  
kahāā chha ?      these days ?  
amerikaamaa chha.      He's in Amerika.
2. ke gariraheko chha ?      What is he doing ?  
kalejmaa paDhiraheko chha.      He is going to college.
3. u ke bishaya paDhiraheko chha?      What's he studying ?  
u samaaj shaastra paDhiraheko.      He is studying sociology.  
chha.

(b)

1. nepaalmā aaunubhandā pahile      Where were you before coming to  
tapaal kahāā hunu hunthyo ?      Nepal ?  
ma yuropmaa thiē.      I was in Europe.
2. tyahāā ke garirahanu bhaeko      What were you doing there ?  
thiyo ?  
tyahāā kaam gariraheko thiē.      I was working there.
3. paDhi pani rahanu bhaeko      Were you also going to school ?  
thiyo ki ?  
ahā, paDhiraheko thiina.      No, I wasn't.
4. ke kaam garirahanu bhaeko      What were you doing ?  
thiyo ?  
dherai jaso khet baarimā kaam      I was working on farms most of  
ra kahilekaahl angreji paDhaa-      of the time and sometimes teaching  
une garathē.      English.

(c)

1. timi hijo belukaa kahāā gayau?      Where did you go yesterday evening ?  
ma mero keTi saathikāā gaē.      I went to my girl friend.
2. timi tyahāā jāādaakheri u ke      What was she doing when you  
gariraheko thiyo ?      went there ?  
u saathisanga kuraa gariraheko      She was talking to a friend.  
thiyo .
3. keko baaremaa kuraa gariraheko      Do you know what they were  
ko thiyo, timilaaī thaahaa chha? taking about ?  
ahā thaahaa chhaina.      No, I don't.
4. timi tyahāā kati belaa samma      How long did you stay there ?  
basyau ?  
rati das baje samma basē.      I stayed there until ten P. M.

#### GRAMMAR NOTES

##### 1. Conjugation of the '...iraheko—' form

##### A. PRESENT

PRONOUNS	AFFIRMATIVE	NEGATIVE
ma	paDhiraheko chhu	chhaina
tā	paDhiraheko chhas	chhainas
u	paDhiraheko chha	chhaina
haami	paDhirahekaa chhaū	chhainau
timi	paDhirahekaa chhau	chhainau
uniharu	paDhirahekaa chhan	chhainan
tapaal	paDhirahanu bhaeko chha	chhaina

7. tyo hoTelko kun KoThaamaa galaichaa bichhaaeko chha ?
8. salleridekhi tin maail TaDhaa kun Thaaũ chha ?
9. tyahaa banekaa galaichaa kastaa hunchhan ?
10. tapaaĩ chyaalsaa ghumna jaanu bhaeko chha ?

## GRAMMAR NOTES

1. baas paainchha– lit: *Is shelter available here ?*

– a very common expression used while asking for overnight lodging during trekking.

2. Learn the following:

jasari pani	any how, by all means
jati pani	any amount
jataa pani	everywhere, anywhere
jasle pani	anybody

3. raamraa, plural of raamro.

152

## B. PAST

PRONOUNS	VERB	AFFIRMATIVE	NEGATIVE
ma	paDhiraheko	thiẽ	thiina
tã	paDhiraheko	thiis	thiinas
u	paDhiraheko	thiyo	thiena
haami	paDhirahekaa	thiyau	thienau
timi	paDhirahekaa	thiyau	thienau
uniharũ	paDhirahekaa	thiẽ	thienan
tapaaĩ	paDhirahanu bhaeko	thiyo	thiena

144

## LESSON 31

aadi	etc.	nambari	a hundred rupee
baaki	left over, remaining,		note
nikaai	very, exceedingly		
bichaar	thought, idea.	saaTi dinu	to change (money)
gaaule	rural.		
hajaaraū	thousands.	sajilai	easily.
harek	every.	saknu	to be able to.
hawaaipatra	aerogram.	sundar	beautiful, nice, pretty.
		taalim	training.

### PART I

1. malaai Tikat dinus na.                      Please give me some stamps.  
kati kati jaane diū ?                      Of what denominations ?
2. pachchis paise daswaTaa dinus      Give me ten 25 paisa stamps and  
ani ek rupiyāā jaane aaThwaTaa.      eight one rupee ones.  
hawas.                      Okay, sir.
3. hawaai patra pani ta hola ni ?      Do you also have aerograms ?  
chha, katiwaTaa chaahine              Yes, I do, How many do you  
yahāā laai ?                      need ?
4. DeDh rupiyāā waalaa pandhra      Please give me fifteen one rupee  
waTaa dinus ta.                      and fifty paise aerograms.  
hawas.                      O. K.  
tapaal nikaai dherai chiTThi              Do you write many letters !  
lekhnu hunchha ho ?
5. ā saathiharu laai chiTThi              Well, its been long time since I have  
nalekheko dherai bhayo.              written letters to my friends.  
jammaa kati bhayo ?                      How much is it altogether ?  
tettis rupiyāā dinus.                      Give me thirty three rupees please.
6. masanga nambari maatra chha.      I only have a hundred rupee note.  
hunchha ma saaTi diūlaa.              That's all right. I can change it.

## PART II

### (a)

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. tirkhaa laagyo bhane tapaai<br>ke garnuhunchha ?<br>paani khaanchhu. | What do you do if you get<br>thirsty ?<br>I drink water.         |
| 2. bhok laagyo bhane ni ?<br>bhaat khaanchhu.                           | What about if you get hungry ?<br>I eat rice.                    |
| 3. Taauko dukhyo bhane ke garnu<br>hunchha ni ?<br>asapirin khaanchhu.  | What do you do if you have a<br>headache ?<br>I take aspirin.    |
| 4. disaa laagyo bhane ni ?<br><br>peragorik khaanchhu.                  | What do you do when you have<br>diarrhoea ?<br>I take paragoric. |

### (b)

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. taalim siddhie pachhi tapaai<br>ke garnuhunchha ?<br>gaaūmaa paDhaauna jaanchhu. | What are you going to do when<br>training is over ?<br>I am going to teach in a village. |
| 2. gaaū man parena bhane ni ?<br>amerikaa pharkanchhu.                              | What if you don't like the village ?<br>I will go back to the States.                    |
| 3. amerikaamaa ke garnu<br>hunchha ni ?<br>amerikaamaa gaera kaam<br>khojchhu.      | What'll you do in the States ?<br><br>I will look for a job when I get<br>there.         |
| 4. kaam paaunubhaena bhane ke<br>garnu hunchha ta ?<br>paDhchhu.                    | What'll you do if you don't get<br>a job ?<br>I'll go to school.                         |

(c)

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. aaja diūso ke garne bīchaar<br>chha ?<br>saathiharu aae bhane taas<br>khelne.                       | What are you thinking of doing<br>this afternoon ?<br>If my friends come along I'll<br>play cards.                                     |
| 2. aaenan bhane ni ?<br>aaenan bhane ghumna jaanchhu.  | If they don't ?<br>If they don't I'll go for a walk.   |
| 3. paani parlaa jasto chha ni<br>aaja ta ?<br>paani paryo bhane raksi khaaera<br>basnu parlaa.         | Looks like it's going to rain<br>to-day ?<br>If it rains I'll spend the day drink-<br>ing raksi.                                       |
| 4. miTho raksi chha bhane ma<br>pani baschhu.<br>miTho ta chhaina, tyahi<br>hijoko baaki alikati chha. | If you have good raksi, I'll<br>also stay on.<br>I don't have any good stuff. I just<br>have a little bit left over from<br>yesterday. |

#### COMPREHENSION:-

nepalkaa gaaū, gaaule jiwān, pahāD, himaalaya aadi herna man laagyo bhane pokharaa jaanu parchha. hawaai jahajmaa gayo bhane pokharaa paune ek ghanTaamaa pugna sakinchha. basmaa gayo bhane saat ghanTaa laagchha tara mini basmaa gayo bhane paāch ghanTaamaa sajilai puginchha pokharaako phewaa taal pani nikai sundar chha. jomsom bhanne Thaa pokharaako uttarta parchha. jomsommaa harek barsha hujaraa bidesihuru ghumna jaanchhan. tyahā pugna chaar paāch din laagchha. tara jahajmaa gayo bhane ta aadhaa ghanTaa mai pugna sakinchha.

#### QUESTIONS

1. nepalmaa gaaū, pahāD aadi herna kahā jaanu parchha ?
2. hawaai jahajmaa gayo bhane kati samayamaa pugna sakinchha ?
3. basmaa gayo bhane kati ghanTaa laagchha ?

4. minibasmaa gayo bhane ni ?
5. phewaataal kasto chha ?
7. jomsommaa harek barsha kati bideshi ghumna jaanchhan ?
8. tyahāā pugna kati din laagchha ?
9. jahaajmaa gayo bhane ni ?

#### GRAMMAR NOTES

1. Conditional clause 'bhane'.

paani paryo bhane ma jaanna      If it rains, I won't go.

or

paani pare ma jaanna.

uniharu aeabhane ma aaūlaa.      I'll come if they come.

dherai kaam garyo bhane      If you work a lot you get tired.

thakaai laagchha.

āāp mahango bhae nakina.      Don't buy the mangoes if they are expensive.

Note that the verb ending of the subordinate conditional clause is generally in the past tense.

yahāā-polite for tapaai

pugna sakinchha- can be reached.†

## LESSON 32

### VOCABULARY

audhi	extremely
baas	shelter, lodging
biu	seed
chheu	side
chhoDi dinu	to leave
jahile pani	always, all the time
jaslaai pani	to any one
je pani	anything
jun pani	any (thing)
lagi dinu	to take, carry something for some one.
palTinu	to lie down
sadar mukaam	district centre
thakaai	fatigue
Thik hunu	to be all right
uhi	the same, the very one

### PART I

1. e didi ! yahāā baas paainchha? Oh sister ! Can I get a place to stay here ?  
paainchha. kati janaa hunu-hunchha ? Sure. How many of you are there?
2. tin janaa chhaū. There are three of us.  
kuaanaa ke chha ? What kind of food do you have ?  
uhi daal bhaat ta ho ni, aru ke Lentils and cooked rice, of course.  
hunu ! What else would we have ?
3. maasu chhaina ra ? Don't you have any meat ?  
maasu ta kukhuraa kaaTnu We'll have to kill a chicken for  
parchha. meat.



- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 4. sutne Thaaũ kataa chha ni ?<br>maathi koThaa chha.   | Where is a place to sleep ?<br>There's a room upstairs.  |
| 5. lau chhiTo bhaat pakaaunos.<br>haami ek chhin palTinchhaũ.<br>saarhai thaakekaa chhaũ.<br>raksi khaanus na. thakaai<br>Thik bhai haalchha ni | O.K. Please hurry and cook the<br>meal. We'll lie down for a while.<br>We are very tired.<br>Drink some raksi. It'll take care<br>of your fatigue. |

## PART II

### (a)

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. jim raksi khaanchha ?<br>khaanchha.       | Does Jim drink raksi ?<br>Yes, he does.       |
| 2. Tim ni ?<br>Tim pani khaanchha ?          | How about Tim ?<br>He does too.               |
| 3. Timko bhaai ni ?<br>u pani khaanchha.     | How about Tim's brother ?<br>He drinks too.   |
| 4. ko raksi khaanchha.<br>jo pani khaanchha. | Who drinks raksi ?<br>Everybody drinks raksi. |

### (b)

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. asanmaa churoT paainchha ?<br>paainchha.                | Are cigarettes available in Asan ?<br>Yes, they are available. |
| 2. aalu ni ?<br>aalu pani paainchha.                       | How about potatoes ?<br>Potatoes are also available.           |
| 3. biu paainchha ki ?<br><br>paainchha. kina napaainu ?    | Do you think seeds are available<br>there ?<br>Sure. Why not ? |
| 4. asanmaa ke ke paainchha ?<br>asanmaa je pani paainchha. | What's available in Asan ?<br>Everything is available in Asan. |

(a)

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. tapaaI bholi pokharaa jaane re.<br>hoina ?<br>jaane bhaneko ho.   | I hear that you are going to Pokhara tomorrow ? Is that right ?<br>I've thought about going.                                 |
| 2. yo chiTThi lagi dinus na.<br>hunchha. lagi diulaa.<br>kaslaai dinē ?<br>jaslaai die pani hunchha.       | Could you take this letter for me?<br>Sure. I'll take it for you.<br>Who shall I give it to ?<br>You can give it to anybody. |
| 4. gharmaa kohi nabhae ni ?<br><br>mero ghar chhewaimaa<br>euTaa pasal chha. tyahāā<br>chhoDi die hunchha. | What if there isn't anybody at home ?<br>There is a store by the side of my house.<br>You can leave it there.                |

#### COMPREHENSION.

pohor ma solukhumbutira ghumna gaeko thiē. himaalayako najikai bhaekole tyataatira jahile pani jaaDo hunchha. tyaile tyahāā jo pani nyaano lugaa lagaaūchan. soluko sadarmukaam salleri ho. sallerimaa euTaa nikai raamro serpaa hoTel chha. tyo hoTelko jun pani koThaamaa galaichha bichhaaeko chha. salleridekhi tin maail TaaDhaa chyaalsaa bhanne Thaaū chha. tyahāā banekaa galaichha audhi raamraa hunchhan.

#### QUESTIONS.

1. pohor tapaaI kahāā ghumna janu bhaeko thiyo ?
2. tyataatira kahile jaaDo hunchha ?
3. kina ?
4. tyahāā ko nyaano lugaa lagaaūchan ?
5. soluko sadar mukaam kahāā ho ?
6. soluko serpaa hoTel kasto chha ?

7. tyo hoTelko kun KoThaamaa galaIchaa bichhaaeko chha ?
8. salleridekhi tin maail TaDhaa kun Thaas chha ?
9. tyahaa banekaa galaIchaa kastaa hunchhan ?
10. tapaaI chyaalsaa ghumna jaanu bhaeko chha ?

## GRAMMAR NOTES

1. baas paainchha— lit: *Is shelter available here ?*

– a very common expression used while asking for overnight lodging during trekking.

2. Learn the following:

jasari pani	any how, by all means
jati pani	any amount
jataa pani	everywhere, anywhere
jasle pani	anybody

3. raamraa, plural of raamro.

## LESSON 23

### VOCABULARY

gaarho laagnu	—	to find difficult.
gaeko	—	last (as in past)
jhanDai	—	almost.
sikchhak	—	teacher.

#### (a)

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. hiyo kina aaunu bhaena ?<br>Taauko dukhekole.      | Why didn't you come yesterday ?<br>Because I had a headache.     |
| 2. kina Taauko dukhyo ta ?<br>dherai raksi khaaekole. | Why did you have a headache ?<br>Because I drank too much raksi. |
| 3. ke ausadhi khaanubhayo ta ?<br>kehipani khaaIna.   | What medicine did you take ?<br>I didn't take anything.          |
| 4. kina nakhaaeko ta ?<br>khaana man nalaagekole.     | Why not ?<br>Because I didn't want to.                           |

#### (b)

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. aaja bihaana kina abelaa<br>uThnubhayo ?  | Why did you get up late this<br>morning ?  |
| 2. hiyo raati abelaa sutekole.   | Because I went to bed late last<br>night.  |
| 3. kina abelaa sutnunbhayo ta ?<br>mero saathiharu aaekaale.   | Why did you go to bed late ?<br>Because my friends came over.  |
| 4. saathiharu kina aekaa thie ta ?<br>hiyo mero gharmaa bihaa bhoj<br>bhaekole meraa saathiharu<br>aekaa thie. | Why did your friends come ?<br>My friends came over because<br>there was a wedding feast at my<br>house yesterday. |

(c)

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. chiyaamaa kina dudh raakhe-<br>nau ?<br>dudh nabhaeko hunaaale. | Why didn't you put milk in the<br>tea ?<br>Because there isn't any milk.        |
| 2. dudh lina kina nagaeko ta ?<br><br>phursad nabhaekohunaaale.    | Why didn't you go out and buy<br>milk ?<br>Because I didn't have any free time. |
| 3. kina phursad bhaena ?<br>lugaa dhunu parekole.                  | Why didn't you have the time ?<br>Because I had to wash clothes.                |
| 4. sabai lugaa dhoyau ta ?<br>dhoina.                              | Did you wash all the clothes ?<br>No, I didn't.                                 |
| 5. kina na dhoeko ta ?<br>saabun siddhiekole.                      | Why did not you wash all of them?<br>Because I did not have enough soap.        |

#### COMPREHENSION:—

maaik nepaal aaeko jhanDai tin barsha bhai sakyō. u bandipurko euTaa iskulmaa paDhaaũchha. nepaal aaunu bhandaa pahile amerikaa maa sikchhak talim liekole uslaai paDhaauna gaarho laagdaina. uslaai Treking assaddhyai man parchha. gaeko hiũdmaa uslaai jomsom jaana manlaageko thiyo tara sancho nabhaekole jaana sakena. hiyo nayaã saDaktira ghumna jaãdaa uslaai bheTeko thiẽ. aaune haptaa jomsom jaanchu bhanthyo. malaai pani jaaũ bhanthyo. tara ke garne? malaai phursad chhaina.

#### QUESTIONS:—

1. maaik nepaal aaeko kati barsha bhayo ?
2. u ke garchha ?
3. uslaai paDhaauna kina gaarho laagdaina ?
4. uslaai Treking kattiko manparchha ?
5. gaeko hiũdmaa uslaai ke garna man laageko thiyo ?

6. jaana sakyo ta ?
7. kina ?
8. hjo uslaai bheTnubhaeko thiyo ?
9. ke gardaa ?
10. usle ke bhanthyo ?
11. tapaa! kina jomsom jaanuhunna ?

## GRAMMAR NOTES

### Forms-

nagaeko hunaale  
 bhaeko hunaale  
 na lageko hunaale  
 gaeko hunaale  
 napaaeko hunaale  
 bhaekole, laagekole, naaaekole, napaaekole

## USAGE

Study the following examples:-

Paisaa nabhaekole kehipani kinina.	I didn't buy anything because I didn't have any money.
thupro kaam bhaeko hunaale baahira jaanaa.	Since I have lots to do, I am not going to go out.
Taauko dukheko hunaale gopal iskul aaena.	Gopal didn't come to school, because he had a headache.
bidyaarthiharu bhaagekole guru risaauunu bhayo.	The teacher got angry because the students ran away.
paani napareko hunale baaTo bigreko chhaina.	The road is not damaged, as it has not rained yet.
thakaai laagekole kaam garna sakdina.	I can't work because I am tired.

NOTES:-

a) **kinabhane** is the Nepali equivalent of *because*. but it is often left out in every day speech. Note the following examples carefully.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| I. tyo jholaa kina nakineko ?<br>paisaa thiena. saarai mahango bhayo.          | Why didn't buy that bag ?<br>I don't have money. It's very expensive.                           |
| II. hijo iskul jaanubhayo ?<br>gaina.<br>kina ?<br>Taauko dukhyo. jaana sakina | Did you go to school yesterday ?<br>No, I didn't.<br>Why ?<br>I had a headache and couldn't go. |
| III. ali khaanos na.<br>bho khaanna.<br>kina ?<br>aghaai sakeko chhu.          | Have some more, please.<br>No, I won't<br>Why ?<br>I'm full.                                    |
| IV. kina aaunu bhaena ?<br>kaam paryo.   | Why didn't you come ?<br>I had work to do.  |

b) The forms “**era**” and “**ekole**” are also used in the same context. It connects two clauses and implies cause and effect.

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| paisaa nabhaera nakineko.<br>(nabhaekole) | I didn't buy it because<br>I didn't have any money.             |
| Taauko dukhera nagaeko.<br>(dukhekole)    | I didn't come because<br>I had a headache.                      |
| kaam parera aauna sakina.<br>(parekole)   | I couldn't come because<br>I had work to do.                    |
| dherai paani parera kheti<br>bigriyo.     | Because of heavy rainfall the<br>crops were damaged.            |
| TikaT napaaera jaana sakekaa<br>chhaina.  | We have not been able to go beca-<br>use we didn't get tickets. |

2. 're' is a particle often used in spoken Nepali.

It is used at the end of a statement to denote second hand information.

Examples:—

u bholi jaane re.  
wahāā paas hunubhayo re.

I hear that he is going tomorrow.  
I hear that  
They say that he passed.  
So and so says that

'sodhthyo' literally, *he used to ask*— this form is used in indirect speech.

tapaai pani masanga jaane  
bhanera usle malaai sodhthyo.  
usle bholi aachhu bhanthyo.

He asked me if I would like to go  
with him.  
He said that he would come  
tomorrow.



## LESSON 34

### VOCABULARY

atyanta	very much
kohi	anybody, somebody
naumaaleko	unboiled
niko hunu	to be well, to be cured
umaaleko	boiled
uThaaunu	to wake-up

#### (a)

1. ek ghanTaa aghi kohi aaeko      Did anyone come here an hour  
thiyo ?      ago ?  
ho, ek jaanaa maanchhe aaeko      Yes, one man did come.  
thiyo.
2. ko aaeko thiyo ?      Who was it ?  
mero saathi.      My friend.
3. u aajaa bholi ke gardaichha ?      What's he doing these days ?  
u iskulmaa paDhaaũdaichha.      He's teaching in a school.
4. usle paDhaaune iskul kahaa      Where is the school he teaches at?  
chha ?  
usle paDhaaune iskul pokharaa      The school where he teaches is in  
najikaiko gaaũmaa chha.      a village near Pokhara.
5. u basne gaaũko naam ke ho ni ?      What's the name of the village  
where he lives.  
u basne gaaũko naam deuraali.      Deurali is the name of the village  
ho.      where he lives.

#### (b)

1. kaalo Topi laaune maanchhe      Who is the man wearing the black  
ko ho ?      cap. ?

kaalo Topi laaune maanchhe  
prakaash ho.

2. u paDhne iskul yahāā baaTa  
kati TaaDhaa chha?

u paDhne iskul yahāā baaTa  
najikai chha.

3. u basne Deraa mahango chha ki  
sasto chha ?

u basne Deraa sasto chha.

4. usko iskulmaa paDhaaune  
masTarharu kati chhan ?  
baara janaa jati chhan.

The man wearing the black cap is  
Prakash.

How far is the school where he  
studies from here ?

The school he goes to is close to  
here.

Is the apartment he lives in  
expensive or cheap ?

It is cheap.

How many teachers teach in his  
school ?

There are about twelve.

(c)

1. tapaaI ke kitaab paDhdai  
hunuhunchha ?  
ma *King Lear* paDhdichhu.

What book are you reading ?

I'm reading *King Lear*.

2. *King Lear* kase lekheko ho ?  
*King Lear* Shakespearle  
lekheko ho.

Who wrote *King Lear* ?

*King Lear* was written by Shakes-  
pear.

3. Shakespear le lekheko aru pani  
kitaab paDhnu bhaeko chha ?  
ho, maile *Hamlet* ra *The Tempest*  
pani paDheko chhu.

Have you read any other books  
written by him ?

Yes, I have read *Hamlet* and *The*  
*Tempest* as well.

4. tapaaIlaai unle lekheko kitaab  
man parchha ?  
ho, dherai man parchha.

Do you like books written by  
him. ?

Yes. I like them very much.

(d)

1. jim kasto paani khaanchha ?  
u umaaleko paani khaanchha.

What sort of water does Jim drink?

He drinks boiled water.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 2. naumaaleko paani khaayo<br>bhane uslaai ke hunchha ?<br>uslaai peT dukchha.                     | What happens when he drinks<br>unboiled water ?<br>His stomach hurts.                                   |
| 3. peT dukhdaakheri u ke<br>garchha ?<br>usle aaphno aphisko DaakTarle<br>dieko ausadhi khaarchha. | What does he do when his stomach<br>hurts ?<br>He takes medicine given by the<br>doctor at this office. |
| 4. tyo DaakTarle dieko ausadhile<br>uslaai niko hunchha ?<br>dheraijaso niko hunchha.              | Does the medicine given by that<br>doctor make him well ?<br>Yes, it usually makes him well.            |

### COMPREHENSION

maaikle hijo usko baale lekheko chiTThi paayo. chiTThi paaūdaa uslaai atyanta khusi laagyo. kinathane usle chhiTThi napaeko ek mahinaa bhaeko thiyo. chiTThi paDhi sakepachhi u usko saathi jimko Deraamaa gayo. jim sutiraheko rahchha. maaikle uslaai uThaayo ra sinemaa herna jaane kuraa garyo. jimko pani sinemaa herna jaane bichaar thiyo. chiyaa siyaa khaaera uniharu sinemaa haltira gae. tara TikaT siddhisakeko rah chha. tyaskaaran uniharule 'black' garne maarchhe khojera paach rupiyaako TikatTlaai aaTh rupiyaa diera here.

### QUESTIONS—

1. maaikle hijo kasle lehheko chiTThi paayo ?
2. chiTThi paaūdaa uslaai kasto laagyo ?
3. kina ?
4. chiTThi paDhisakepachhi u kahaā gayo ?
5. jim ke garrihakeko rahchha ?
6. maaikle uslaai uThaera ke kuraa garyo ?
7. jimko ke bichaar thiyo ?

8. **chiyaa siyaa khaaera uniharu kataatira gae ?**
9. **uniharule kina ‘black’ garne maanchhe khoje ?**
10. **uniharule pããch rupiyããko TikaTlaai kati diera sinemaa here ?**

## **GRAMMAR NOTES**

1. **In English Relative Pronouns or Adverbs are usually used to introduce Adjectival clauses. In Nepali, however they are seldom used in this way. Study the following examples—**

tapaalle sodheko prashna  
jaapaanmaa baneko saamaan  
tapaalle dieko kalam  
timile lekhne kitaab  
usle kinne moTar  
umaaleko paani.  
kuheko aãp  
raato saari laaeko keTi

The question that you asked  
Things (that are) made in Japan  
The pen that you gave  
the book that you’ll write  
The car that he’s going to buy  
boiled water  
rotten mango  
The girl in the red sari

## LESSON 35

### VOCABULARY

<b>bhaansaa garnu</b>	<b>to eat a meal (polite)</b>
<b>bhuraa</b>	<b>fingerling</b>
<b>bish</b>	<b>poison</b>
<b>jangali</b>	<b>wild</b>
<b>kisaan</b>	<b>farmer</b>
<b>maachhaa</b>	<b>fish</b>
<b>maadhyamik bidyaalaya</b>	<b>secondary school</b>
<b>maarnu</b>	<b>to kill</b>
<b>maddat</b>	<b>help, assistance</b>
<b>maddat garnu</b>	<b>to assist</b>
<b>matsya bikaas kendra</b>	<b>Fisheries Development Centre</b>
<b>paalnu</b>	<b>to raise</b>
<b>phursad</b>	<b>leisure</b>
<b>pokhari</b>	<b>pond</b>
<b>rahar</b>	<b>desire</b>
<b>saaTnu</b>	<b>to trade, to change</b>
<b>sukaaunu</b>	<b>to dry</b>

### PART I

1. **tapaal yahi gaaūmaa basnu-hunchha ?**  
**hajur.**

**Do you live in this village ?**  
**That's right.**
2. **yahiko maadhyamik bidyaalayamaa paDhaaunu hunchha ki kaso ?**  
**hoina, ma ta kisaanharulaai maachhaa paalna maddat garchhu.**

**Do you teach in the secondary school here ?**  
**No, I help farmers raise fish.**

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 3. malaai pani maachhaa paalne<br>rahar chha. maachhaa paalna<br>ke ke garnu parchha ?   | I also would like to raise fish.<br>What does one need to do to<br>raise fish ?   |
| 4. tapaako pokhari chha ki<br>chhaina ?<br>chha.   | Do you have a pond or not ?<br><br>Yes, I do.   |
| 5. sabbhandaa pahile pokharilaa<br>sukaaunu parchha ani bish<br>raakhnu parchha.<br>bish raakhera tyasmaa bhaekaa<br>jangali maachhaaharulaai<br>maarnu parchha.<br>bhuraa kinna kahaa paainchha<br>ni ? | First of all you should dry the<br>pond and then poison it.<br><br>You should kill all the wild fish<br>in it by putting poison in the pond.<br><br>Where can I buy fingerlings ? |
| 5. bhuraa ta matsya bikaas kendra<br>maa paainchha.<br>haamro gaaatira pani aanus na<br>phursadmaa.  | Fingerlings are available at the<br>Fisheries Development Centre.<br>Please come to our village too<br>when you have time   |
| 6. hunchha. aarko haptaatira<br>aaulaa.  | O. K. I'll come next week.  |

## PART II

(a)

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. tapaako ghadi ko kati paryo ?<br><br>adhaai saya.                 | How much did you pay for your<br>watch ?<br>Two hundred and fifty rupees. |
| 2. kineko kati bhayo ?<br>saat barsha bhayo.                         | How long ago did you buy it ?<br>Seven years ago.                         |
| 3. puraano bhaechha.<br>samaya raamrosanga didaina<br>holaa, hoina ? | It's quite old.<br>It doesn't keep good time, does it?                    |

puraano bhaetaa pani samaya  
ta raamro dinchha.

Even though it's old, it keeps  
good time.

4. merosanga saaTaa na ta ?  
bho. saaTdina.

How about trading it for mine ?  
No, thanks.

(b)

1. bhaansaa bhayo tapaaiko ?  
khaaeko chhaina.

Did you eat ?  
No, I haven't.

2. bhaat nakhaaeko bhaeta bhok  
laageko holaa tapaaillaai, hoina?  
bhaat nakhaaeko bhae pani bhok  
laageko chhaina.

If you haven't eaten, you must  
be hungry ?  
Even though I haven't eaten I'm  
not hungry.

3. kina ta ?  
bihaana abelaa khaaeko thi.

How come ?  
I had my morning meal late.

4. khaanaa nakhaaepani chiyaa siyaa  
khaana jaawaũ.  
hunchha, jaawaũ.

Even if you don't want to eat any  
food, let's go to have some tea.  
O. K. Let's go.

### COMPREHENSION.

jeph nepaal aaeko paaach mahinaa maatra bhae pani u raamro sanga nepaali bolna sakchha. u basne gaaũ dherai ramaailo nabhae pani uslaai tyo gaaũ man pareko chha. usle dherai jaso aaphno bhaan-sele pakaaeko nepaali khaanaa khaae pani kahile kahl ameriki khaanaa pakaaera khaanchha. usle paDhaaune bidyaalayamaa pug na pug saat saya bidyaarthiharu paDhchhan. tyati dherai bidyaarthi bhaepani bidyaalayamaa keTiharuko sankhyaa bhane nikai kam chha. usko Deraa baaTa bidyaalaya dui maail TaaDhaa chha. TaaDhaa bhaepani u sadha hDera jaanchha.

## QUESTIONS.

1. jeph nepaal aaeko kati mahinaa bhayo ?
2. u nepaal aaeko pāach mahinaa maatra bhae pani u kasto nepaali bolchha ?
3. u basne gaaū kasto chha ?
4. uslaai usko gaaū man pareko chha ta ?
5. u dherai jaso kun kisimko khaanaa khaanchha ?
6. kasle pakaaūchha ni ?
7. u sadhai nepaali khaanaa khaanchha ta ?
8. usle paDhaaune bidyaalayamaa keTiharuko sankyhaa kati chhaa?
7. jephko DeraabaaTa bidyaalaya najik chha ki TaaDhaa chha ?
10. u saaikalmaa bidyaalaya jaanchha ?
11. kasari jaanchha ta ?
12. tapaaI bhae tyati laamo baaTo hiDera jaanuhunthyoo holaa ?

## GRAMMAR NOTES

- 1) Expression of contrast (*but, though, even if* clauses).

khaanaa piro bhaetaa pani malaai      The food is hot but I like it.  
miTho laagyo.

u moTo bhaetaa pani kamjor      He is fat but weak.  
chha.

khaanaa nakhaetaa pani malaai      Though I haven't eaten I'm not  
bhok laageko chhaina.      hungry.

## FORMS AND USAGES;

Study the following examples carefully and note the forms and usages:-

- 1) kaaThmaandDu raajdhani      Though Kathmandu is the capital  
bhaepani malaai man pardaina.      I don't like it.
- 2) raame dublo bhae pani baliyo      Though Rame was thin he was  
thiyo.      strong.



- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 3) mero bhaai moTo bhae pani kamjor chha.                   | My younger brother is weak though he is fat.                   |
| 4) mero ghaDi puraano bhae pani Taaam raamro dinchha.       | Though my watch is an old one it keeps good time.              |
| 5) usle bi. e. pass gare pani kaam paaeko chhaina.          | Though he has a B. A. he hasn't gotten any job.                |
| 6) u khub koshis gare pani paas huna saktaina.              | Though he tries very hard he can't pass.                       |
| 7) gopal naaae pani ma aauchhu.                             | I'll come even if Gopal doesn't come.                          |
| 8) khaanaa nakhaaetaapani bhok laageko chhaina.             | I'm not hungry though I haven't eaten.                         |
| 9) raamlaai dekhe pani bolaaina.                            | Though I saw Ram I didn't call him.                            |
| 10) Taauko dukhe pani u kaam gardai chha.                   | Though he has a headache he is working.                        |
| 11) paani pare pani garmi chha.                             | Though it rained, it is hot.                                   |
| 12) yo gaaūmaa dhaaraa nabhae pani paaniko dukkhaa chhaina. | Though there are no water taps, there is no scarcity of water. |
| 13) aaja sājha aaunos, hai.                                 | Please come (to my place) this evening.                        |
| miTing chha. Dhilo hunchha ki.                              | There is a meeting, It might be late.                          |
| Dhilo bhaepani aaunu holaa.                                 | Please come even if it is late.                                |

## 2. je, Jahāā etc. e pani

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| jahāā gaepani u chhoraalaai sangai laiijaanchha. | He takes his son with him wherever he goes.       |
| jo aae pani ma chhaina. bhanidinu.               | Whoever comes, tell (him) that I'm not here.      |
| solTimaā je khaaepani mahango chha.              | Whatever you eat at the Soaltee, it is expensive. |

je aushadhi khaae pani sancho  
bhaena.

jahile aaepani u gharmaa  
hũdaina.

No matter what medicine I take,  
I still don't feel well.

He is not home no matter when  
I go.

### **3. epani hunchha**

#### **Examples :**

kaam sakiyo raam ?  
sakiyo .

uso bhae timi gae pani hunchha.  
maile ke ke khaana hunchha  
DaakTar ?

piro, amilo baahek je khaaepani  
hunchha.

Is the work finished, Ram ?  
Yes, it is,

In that case, you can go.  
What can I eat doctor ?

You can eat anything except hot  
and sour things.

### **4. epani na ..epani**

timi gaepani nagaepani ma ta  
jaanchhu

Whether you go or not I am going.

## LESSON 36

### VOCABULARY

anushaashan	discipline	maanabiki shaastra	humanities
badmaas	mischievous	raastra bhaashaa	national language
bigyaan	science	rusi	Russian
byabahaar	treatment	sanskrit	Sanskrit
ghanTaaghar	clock-Tower	sanskriti	Culture
dwaaraa	by	sarkaari	Government (Adj.)
kaaryaalaya	office	taalim	training
		sajaaya	punishment

(a)

1. nepaalko sabbhandaa puraano kalej kun ho. ? Which is the oldest college in Nepal ?  
tri chandra kalej ho. Tri-chandra college.
2. tyo kalej kahāānira chha ? Where is that college ?  
ratna paark najikai ghanTaa It's near Ratna Park, very close  
ghar sangai chha. to the clock-tower.
3. tyahāā kun kun bishaya What subjects are taught there ?  
paDhaainchha ?  
bigyaan ra maanabiki shaastra Science and Humanities.  
paDhaainchha.
4. tyahhāā paDhne bidyaarthiharu- Do the students who go there have  
sanga paisaa liinchha ki liidaina? to pay tuition fees ?  
liinchha. Yes, they do.

1. nepaalko sarkaari kaaryaalaya harumaa kun bhaasha bolinchha ?  
nepaali bhaashaa bolinchha.      What language is spoken in the government offices in Nepal ?  
Nepali.
2. iskul, kalejharumaa ni ?      How about in schools and colleges?  
tyahāāpani nepaali nai bolinchha.      Nepali is spoken there as well.
3. kina aru bhaashaa bolidaina ?      Why aren't other languages spoken  
nepaali bhaashaa raashtra      Because Nepali is the national  
bhaashaa bhaekole.      language of Nepal.
4. tyahāā chiththi haru pani      Are the letters there also written  
nepaali bhaashaamaa nai      in Nepali ?  
lekhinchha ?  
ho, nepaali bhaashaamaa nai      Yes, they are also written in  
lekhinchha.      Nepali

(c)

1. piskorko taalimmaa kati ghanTaa nepaali sikaainchha ?  
ek dinko chaar dekhi chha ghanTaa nepaali sikaainchha.      How many hours of Nepali is taught in a Peace Corps training ?  
Four to six hours a day.
2. aru ke ke sikaainchha ni –      What else is taught ?  
nepaalko sanskriti ra swayam      Nepali culture and the nature of  
sewakle garne kaamko baare-      the job the volunteers are going  
maa pani sikaainchha.      to do.
3. yi kuraaharu nepaali dwaaraa      Are these things taught by Nepalis  
sikaainchha ki ameriki haru      or Americans ?  
dwaara ?  
nepaali ra ameriki haru dubai      They are taught both by Nepalis  
dwaara sihaainchha.      and Americans.

4. taalim kaaThmaanDumaa  
diinchha ki aru Thaaūmaa  
diinchha ?

Is the training given in Kathmandu  
or somewhere else ?

dheraijaso kaaThmmanDu  
baahira gaaūmaa diinchha.

Most of the time, it is given in  
villages outside of Kathmandu.

## COMPREHENSION

maaikle paDhaaune iskul yahi ho. yo iskulmaa angreji nepaali  
ra sanskrit bhaashaa paDhaaInchha tara yahāā hindi, rusi aadi bhaa-  
shaaharu paDhaaIdaina.yo iskul nepaalkaa raamraa iskul maddhe  
ek ho. yahāā basne keTaakeTilaai raamro khaanaa diinchha. iskulmaa  
harek haptaa euTaa sinemaa dekhaainchha. yo iskul pus ra maaghmaa  
banda garinchha. klaasmaa Dhilo aaune, badmaasi garne, raamro  
byabahaar nagarne keTaakeTilaai sajaaya pani diinchha, tyas kaaran  
iskulmaa bidyaartkiharuko anushaashan raamro chha.

## QUESTION

1. maaaikle paDhaaune iskul kun ho ?
2. yahāā kun kun bhaashaa paDhaainchha ?
3. yahāā rusi bhaashaa pani paDhaainchha ?
4. hindi ni ?
5. yahāā basne keTaakeTilaai kasto khaanaa dinchha ?
6. iskulmaa harek haptaa ke garinchha ?
7. yo iskul kun kun mahinaamaa banda garinchha ?
8. kastaa bidyaarthiharulaai sajaaya diinchha ?
9. yo iskulko anushaashan kasto chha ?

## GRAMMAR NOTES

1. 'paDhaainchha', 'garinchha', 'sikaainchha' are the passive forms of the verb 'paDbaa-  
unu,' garnu' and 'sikaauu'. In Nepali most verbs are frequently used in the passive  
form.

## LESSON 37

### VOCABULARY

anekaū	several	krishi	agriculture
		laakh	one hundred thousand
byawasthaa	system	peshaa	occupation
chhetra	region, area	pratisat	percent
janasankhyaa	population	raajmaarga	Highway
karoD	ten million	yaataayaat	transportation
sri pāāch mahaaraajaadhiraaaj		–His Majesty the King.	

### PART I

1. nepaalko janasankhyaa kati chha ?  
ek karoD dash laakh.  
What is the population of Nepal ?  
Eleven million.
2. dherai jaso nepaaliharuko pesaa ke ho ?  
krishi.  
What is the occupation of most Nepalese ?  
Agriculture.
3. kati pratishat nepaliharū saakchhyar chhan ?  
unnais pratishat.  
What percentage of the Nepalese are literate ?  
Nineteen percent.
4. nepaalmaa yaataayaatko byawasthaa kasto chha ni ?  
euTaa purba pashchim raajmaarg chha. pahaaDi chhetrakaa anekaū Thaaūharumaa hawaai jahaajbaaTa pan pugna sakincha.  
What is the transportation system like in Nepal ?  
There is an east-west High way. Also several places in the mountainous regions can be reached by aeroplanes.
5. yahāākaa maanisharu kun kun dharma maanchhan ni ?  
hiadu ra bauddha dharma.  
Which religions do the people of Nepal follow ?  
Hinduism and Buddhism.

6. nepaalkaa shri paach maahaa- What is the name of His Majesty  
raajaadhiraajko naam ke ho ? the King of Nepal ?  
birendra bir bikram shaha dev. Birendra Bir Bikram Shah Dev.

## PART II

### (a)

1. maaiklaai bheTnu bhayo ta ? Did you see Mike ?  
bheTē. Yes, I did.
2. ke bhannu bhayo ta ? What did you tell him ?  
bholi aaunu holaa bhanera bhane. I told him to come tomorrow.
3. usle ke bhanyo ta ? What did he say ?  
aauchhu bhanera bhanyo. He said that he would come.

### (b)

1. bholikolaagi TikaT lyaaunu Did you get the ticket for  
bhayo ta ? tomorrow ?  
lyaaaina. No, I didn't.
2. kina ta ? Why not ?  
TikaT chhaina bhanera bhanyo. He said that there weren't any  
tickets
3. parsikolaagi lyaannu bhaena ta? Didn't you buy one for the day  
after tomorrow ?  
parsikolaagi bholi aaunus He told me to come tomorrow  
bhanera bhanyo. for the day after tomorrow.

### (c)

1. DaakTarkāā gayau ta ? Did you go to the Doctor's ?  
gaē. Yes, I did.

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 2. ke bhanyo ta ?<br>peTmaa jukaa parekochha<br>bhanera bhanyo. | What did he say ?<br>He said that I have worms.  |
| 3. ausadhi diyo ta ?<br>diena.                                  | Did he give you any medicine ?<br>No, he didn't. |
| 4. kina ni ?<br>bholi aaunus bhanyo.                            | Why not ?<br>He said that I should go tomorrow.  |

### COMPREHENSION

hijo maaikle makahāā aaūchhu bhanera bhaneko thiyo. dinbhari uslaai maile parkhē. u naaaekole aaja bihaana usko Deraamaa gaē. u suti raheko rahechha. hijo kina aaunu bhaena bhanera maile uslaai sodhe. usle peT dukhera aauna sakina bhanera bhanyo. bholi aaunu-hunchha ta bhani maile soddha sancho bhayo bhane aaulaa bhanera bhanyo. uslaai DaakTarle paani sādhai umaalera khaana bhaneko thiyo re. tara usko isTov bigrera paani umaalna napaaekole tyasai khaaechha. naumaaleko paani khaaeko hunaaale usko peTmaa jukaa paryo holaa, tysaile ta usko peT dukheko chha.

### QUESTIONS

1. maaikle ke bhaneko thiyo ?
2. dinbhari tapaaile kaslaai parkhanubhayo ?
3. aaja kina usko Deraamaa jaanubhayo ?
4. u ke gariraheko rahechha ?
5. tapaaile uslaai ke bhannu bhayo ?
6. usle ke bhanyo ?
7. ani tapaaile ke sōdhunubhayo ?
8. usle ke bhanyo ta ?
9. uslaai DaakTarle ke bhaneko thiyo re ?
10. usle paani kina umaalena ?
11. usko peTmaa ke bhayo holaa ?
12. usko peT kina duhheko chha ?
13. tapaaī pani naumaaleko paani khaanuhunchha ?



## GRAMMAR NOTES

### REPORTED SPEECH

When we report someone's speech to someone else we call it "Reported speech". You know that the particle 're' is used in the this way and is very common in spoken Nepali but is not much used in written Nepali.

There is one other form of "Reported Speech" which is common both in written and in spoken Nepali. In this form the actual words of the speaker are quoted, and the tense of the verb is not changed. Some change is made, however, in the person of the pronoun and the verb, and the word 'bhanera' is used to the end of the words quoted. Here are some examples.

### STATEMENT:

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| A) Direct- ma paalpaa jaanna.                      | I won't go to Palpa.                      |
| B) Indirect- usle paalpaa jaanna (bhanera) bhanyo. | He said that he would not go to Palpa.    |
| usle paalpaa jaanna bhanera malaai bhanyo.         | He told me that he would not go to Palpa. |

In the first sentence the word 'bhanera' is optional but in the second one it is necessary.

### COMMAND

- |   |                                      |
|---|--------------------------------------|
| Direct: bholi aau.                        | Come tomorrow.                       |
| Indirect: usle bholi aau (bhanera) bhanyo | He said that I should come tomorrow. |
| usle bholi aau bhanera malaai bhanyo.     | He told me to come tomorrow.         |

### QUESTION

- Direct : timi basne ghar yahi ho ?  
Indirect : usle timi basne ghar yahi ho bhanera sodhyo.

Note that in the following sentences 'bhanera' (lit. ; having said) is not a sign of Indirect Speech.

timi aauchhau bhanera ma aaeko. I came because (I knew that) you were coming.

raam pahilaa hunchha bhanera Everybody had guessed that Ram  
sabaile anumaan garekaa thie. would be first (in the exam).

### **FUTURE TENSE**

Although simple present tense– ma jaanchhu – etc. is often used for future indefinite tense, there are two other future indefinite forms in use and should be learnt.

### **FUTURE CONDITIONAL**

The 'laa' form is sometimes used with references to future action. It is called Future Conditional.

#### **Examples:**

ma bholi aaulaa, ahile jaanchhu. I'll come tomorrow, but I am leaving now.

kitaab paDhisakepachhi tapaallaai I'll give this book to you after  
diulaa. I finish reading it.

baabulaai hernus khaaT baaTa Please look at the baby. It'll fall  
laDlaa. off from the cot.

haamiharu kati baje taansen What time will we arrive at  
pugaulaa ? Tansen ?

aaja raati paani parlai jasto chha. Looks like it'll rain tonight.  
mohan yo paTak paas hola ta ? Do you think Mohan will pass this  
year ?

yo baabu kahile hiDna sakne holaa? When will this baby be able to  
walk ?

uniharu aadainan jasto ta malaai I don't think they'll come. Let  
laagdaina. naparkhaa bho. us not wait.

### FUTURE CONDITIONAL TENSE.

PRONOUN	AFFIRMATIVE	NEGATIVE	
ma	jaaulaa	jaawaina	I'll go / I won't go.
ta	jaalaas	jawainas	You'll go/You won't go.
u	jaalaa	jaawaina	He'll go/He won't go.
haami(haru)	jaawaulaa	jaawainau	We'll go/We won't go.
timi (haru)	jaaulaa	jaawainau	You'll go/You won't go.
uniharu	jaalaan	jawaainan	They'll go/They won't go.
tapaa (haru)	jaanuholaa	jaanu hawaina	You'll go/You won't go.

### FUTURE INDEFINITE TENSE

The 'nechhu' form is used in formal written Nepali, Radio broadcasts and newspapers.

#### Examples:

1. "bholi aparaanha kaaThamaanDu "It'll rain in the Kathmandu  
upatyakaamaa paani parnechha. Valley tomorrow afternoon".  
(weather forecast over Radio Nepal)
2. "pardhaan mantrile bholi nai "The premier will hold talks with  
bhaaratiya netaaharusanga Indian leaders tomorrow".  
kuraakaani garnu hhuncchha". (news item in the **Gorakhapatra**)
3. "mero chhoro profesar hune- "My son will be a professor and  
chan ani ma huncchhu profesa- I'll be the father of the professor".  
rsaahabko baakbu". (from a novel)

In spoken Nepali, too, this form is used if the speaker is making an assertion, a promise  
a threat or a prophecy.

#### Examples:

ma timilai sakdo maddat I'll give you all possible help.  
dinechhu

haami dui ghanTaa pachhi  
aaunechhaũ. timi Thik paarera  
basa.

We'll come after two hours.  
Get ready.

yo kaam aaja sakenau bhane  
timilaai ma paisaa dine chhaina.  
yasari juwaa khelna thaalyo  
bhane, timi chhiTai kangaal  
hunechhau.

I won't pay you if you don't  
finish this work today.  
If you go on gambling like this,  
you will be a bankrupt soon.

bhaneko maana, natra pachhi  
dukkha paaunechhau.

Listen to what I'm saying, other-  
wise you'll suffer later.

### Future Indefinite Tense

PRONOUN:      AFFIRMATIVE:      NEGATIVES

ma	jaanechhu	jaanechhaina	I'll go/I won't go.
tã	jaanechhas	jaanechhainas	You'll go/You won't
u	jaanechha	jaanechhaina	He'll go/He won't go.
hami (haru)	jaanechhaũ	jaanechhainaũ	We'll go/We won't
timi (haru)	jaanechhau	jaanechhainau	You'll go/You won't go.
uniharu	jaanechhan	jaanechhainan	They'll go/They won't go.
tapaal (haru)	jaanuhunechha	jaanuhunechhaina	You'll go/You won't go.

## VOCABULARY

mantraalaya	—	ministry
sachib	—	secretary
sikchhyaa	—	education

(a)

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. <b>hijo tapaaile kati baje bhaat</b><br><b>kharu bho ?</b><br><b>paune dash baje khaae.</b>                         | <b>What time did you eat yesterday ?</b><br><br><b>I ate at quarter to ten.</b>   |
| 2. <b>khaane bittikai ke garnu bhayo?</b><br><br><b>khaane bittikai iskul gaē.</b>                                     | <b>What did you do immediately</b><br><b>after eating ?</b><br><b>I went to school right after eating.</b>                                  |
| 3. <b>iskulmaa pugdaa kati</b><br><b>bajeko thiyo ?</b><br><b>dash baji sakeko thiyo.</b>                              | <b>What time was it when you arrived</b><br><b>at school ?</b><br><b>It was past ten O'clock.</b>   |
| 4. <b>iskulmaa pugne bittikai ke</b><br><b>garnubhoyo ?</b><br><b>iskulmaa pugne bittikati klaasmaa</b><br><b>gaē.</b> | <b>What did you do immediately</b><br><b>after arriving at school ?</b><br><b>I went to class right after arriving</b><br><b>at school.</b> |

(b)

- |                                      |  |
|--------------------------------------|--|
| 1. <b>hijo diuso ke garnubhayo ?</b> | <b>What did you do yesterday afternoon ?</b> |
| <b>paaTan gaeko thiã.</b>            | <b>I went to Patan.</b>                      |
| 2. <b>kina ?</b>                     | <b>Why ?</b>                                 |
| <b>sinemaa herne bichaar thiyo.</b>  | <b>I wanted to see the movie.</b>            |

3. hernubhayo ta ?  
naherikana pharkē.

Did you see it ?  
I came back without seeing it.

4. kin ta ?  
bhiD rahechha, tyas kaaran  
tikaT paaiena.

Why ?  
It was crowded so tickets  
were not available.

(c)

1. hiyo dinbhari kahāā jaanu-  
bhaeko thiyo ?  
sikchhyaa mantraalayamaa  
gaeko thiē.

Where were you the whole day  
yesterday ?  
I was at the Ministry of Educa-  
tion.

2. ke kaam thiyo ra ?  
sachibjyulaai bheTne kaam  
thiyo.

What did you have to do there ?  
I had to see the Secretary.

3. bheT bhayo ta ?  
bhet ta bhayo tara chaar baje

Did you see him ?  
I saw him but only at four O'clock.

4. wahāā naaunjel ke garnubhayo  
ta ?  
wahāā naaunjel gaph garera  
basē.

What did you do until he came ?  
I sat and talked until he came.

## GRAMMAR NOTES

### 1. /na khaaikana/etc.

Without eating, without seeing, without asking etc. This form is made by/na/ the root of the verb /ikana/. Study the following phrases along with their root verbs.

nuhaaunu  
paDhnu  
dinu

nanuhaaikana  
napaDhikana  
nadiikana

hāāsnu	nahāāsikana
umaalnu	naumaalikana
garu	nagarikana
bolnu	nabolikana
kinnu	nakinikana
leknu	nalekhikana

The following are made in a lishgly different way.

hunu	nabhaikana
dhunu	nadhoikana
jaanu	nagaikana

2. ne-bittikai }  
naa-sath } *as soon as*

u aaune bittikai tapaailai  
khabar garchhu.  
bhaat paaknaasaath malaai  
bhana.

I'll let you know as soon as he  
comes.  
Let me know as soon as the food  
is ready.

na { naaaunjel } until  
naaesamma

Both of these forms are used.

maai naaunjel maile uslai parkhē. I waited for Mike until he  
came back.

tapaaI khaaunjel ma parkhanchhu. I'll wait until you eat.

**Paropakaar**, it means benevolence, charity, kindness. Here-name of a school.

raastriya rangashaalaa The national stadium.

**harukka hunu** (garu)– *Lit to be at the point of death.* Figuratively  
this means to be really crazy about something.

### Compound Verbs

dash baji sakeko thiyo.

It was past ten O'clock.

u gaisakyo.  
ma lyaaidiñlaa.

He has already gone.  
I'll bring for you.

In the above examples 'baji sakeko', 'gaisakyo' and 'lyaaidiñlaa' are compound verbs because they are formed by two different verbs. Below are given some compound verbs with examples.

1. verb dinu

maile uslaai timro khabar  
bhanidiñ  
usko chiTThi lekhidiyau ta ?

I gave him your message.  
Did you write the letter for him ?

2. verb parnu

malaai aajai ajaanuparchha.  
rughaa laagyo bhane aaraam  
garnuparchha.

I have to go today.  
You should rest when you have  
cold.

3. verb haalnu

ma gaihaalchhu.

I am leaving right now.

This verb form is used to show immediately.

4. verb saknu

uniharu gaisake.  
usle kaam paaaisakyo.  
timile yo kitaab paDhisakyau ?

They have already left.  
He has already found a job.  
Have you finished reading this  
book ?



## LESSION 37

### VOCABULARY

bes	good	oraalo	downhill
bich	middle	ras	juice
chheu	side	taamaang	Tamang
lagiraakhnu	bring along	tirthasthaan	holy place
naumaaleko	unboiled	ukaalo	uphill

#### (a)

1. dui haptaa aghi tapaaI kahāā      Where did you go two weeks ago?  
jaanu bhaeko thiyo ?  
dui haptaa aghi ma pokharaa      I went to Pokhara.  
gaeko thiē
2. pokharaa kasto rahechha ?      What did you think of Pokhara ?  
pokharaa nikaai raamro rahechha. I though it was very beautiful.
3. phewaa taaltira pani jaanu      Did you go to Phewa lake also ?  
bhayo ?  
ho, gaē.      Yes, I did.
4. tyahāā ke ke rahechha ?      What did you see there ?  
taalkochheumaa dherai res-      I saw lots of restaurants beside  
Turaaharu ra bichmaa euTaa      the lake and a temple in the  
mandir rahchha.      middle.
5. taalmaa pauDi pani khelnu      Did you also swim in the lake ?  
bhayo ki ?  
pauDi ta khelina.      No, I didn't.

#### (b)

1. hijo beluki kun resTuraamaa      Where did you eat yesterday  
khaanaa khaanu bhayo ?  
ommaa.      evening ?  
At the Om.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 2. tyahāā kasto khaanaa paāine rahechha ?<br>tibbati ra inDiyan.                             | What kind of food is available there ?<br>Tibetan and Indian.                                    |
| 3. piune kuraa ke ke paine rahechha<br>biyar, koko kolaa ra phalphul ko ras paaine rahechha. | What is available to drink ?<br>Beer, Coke and fruit juice.                                      |
| 4. resTuraa kasto laagyo ta ?<br>khaanaa ta miTho tara Thaaū bhane ali phohor rahechha.      | What do you think of the restuarant<br>The food was good but the place seemed a bit dirty to me. |

(c)

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. bihaana kahāā gaekaa thiyau ?<br>saathiko gaharmaa.  | Where were you this morning ?<br>At my friend's house.                                  |
| 2. saathisanaga bheT bhayo ?<br>ahā, DaakTarkomaa gaechha.  | Did you see your friend ?<br>No, he had already gone to the doctor's.                   |
| 3. kina ra ? ke bhaechha ?<br>hijodekhi usko peT dukhechha  | Why ? What happened to him ?<br>His stomach has been hurting since yesterday.           |
| 4. kasari peT duhhe chha ?<br>saathiko gharmaa bhoj khaana gaechha ra naumaaleko paani khaaechha. | How come his stomach hurts ?<br>He went to his friend's house and drank unboiled water. |

#### COMPREHENSION:

gaeko mahinaa ma ra meraa tin saathiharu gosaaikunDatira ghumna gaekaa thiyaū. yo nepaalko euTaa tirthasthaan ho. gosaaikundDa jaana ra aauna jammaa dui haptaa laagdo rahechha. yoThaaū karib panDhra hajaar phiT mathi euTaa ramaailo Thaaūmaa rahechha. tyahāā jaana dherai ukaalo oraalo pardo rahechha. baaToma dherai

jaso taamaang gaaũ rahechhan. taamaang bhaepani uniharu nepaali boldaa rahechhan. baaToko kunai kunai gaaumaa khaanaa paaido rahechha, kunaimaa napaaaine rahechha. tyasaile kehi khaanaa lagi rakhnu bes hãdo rahechha.

### QUESTIONS:—

1. gaeko mahinaa ma ra meraa saathiharu kahãã gaekaa thiyau ?
2. tyahãã jaana aauna kati laagdo rahechha ?
3. yo Thaaũ kati hajaar PhiT maathi rahechha ?
4. kasto Thaaumaa rahechha ?
5. tyahãã jaane baaTo kasto rahechha ?
6. baaToma kun gaaũ pardo rahechha ?
7. taamaang bhaepani uniharu kun bhaashaa boldaa rahechhan ?
8. baaToko gaaumaa khaanaa paaine rahechha ?
7. ke garnu bes hãdo rahechha ?
10. tapaaũ gosaaikundDa jaanu bhaeko chha ?

### GRAMMAR NOTES

1. See lesson 25 for the use of 'rahechha'
2. In the following examples or in the sentences in the above lesson 'bhane' means 'as for

kaaThmaanDumaa tarkaari sasto rahechha tara maasu bhane dherai mahago rahechha.	I found that in Kathmandu vegetables are cheap, as for meat, it's very expensive.
ma khasiko maasu khaanchu. kukhuraako bhane khaanna.	I eat goat meat. As for chicken meat, I don't eat it.

### Unknown Past

taam DaakTarkomaa gaechha      This implies that the fact that Tam had gone to the doctor's has just been known to the speaker. This tense form is known

as Unknown Past and is very common in Nepali, like 'rah**chha**'.

Study the following examples:

hijo raati paani parechha.  
u ta hijai pokharaa gae**chha**.

biraalole sabai dudh khaae**chha**.  
tarkaari piro bhae**chha**.  
DaaDaamaa hiiu pare**chha**.  
timi ta assadhyai dublaae**chha**u.

suneu ! raamko bahiniko bihe  
bhae**chha**.  
bil ta amerikaa pharke**chha**.

kina, ke bhae**chha** ?  
usko baa bitnu bhae**chha**.

I see that it rained last night.  
I found out just now that he left  
for Pokhara yesterday.

Oh, look! The cat drank all the milk.  
I find the vegetables hot.  
I see that it snowed over the hill.  
I notice that you have become very  
thin.

Did you hear that Ram's sister got  
married ?

I have just heard that Bill returned  
to the States.

Why, what happened ?

I hear that his father died.

## LESSON 40

### VOCABULARY

abasya	for sure, certainly	mihenat garnu	to work hard
abelaa	late	milansaar	friendly
baani	habit	paThaaunu	to send
khojnu	to look for	patra	letter
khusi paarnu	to please	rojnu	to choose
maagnu	to ask for	saruwaa	transfer

### (a)

1. timi nepaalmaa aaeko kati bhayo ?  
tin mahinaa jati bhayo.  
How long has it been since you came to Nepal ?  
About three months.
2. timile kina nepaalmaa aauna rojyau ?  
nepaal raamro chha bhanera sunekole.  
Why did you choose to come to Nepal ?  
Because I'd heard that Nepal is beautiful.
3. tapaallai koriyaamaa paThaaeko bhae jaanu hunthyo ?  
malaai koriyaamaa paThaaeko bhae jaannathē.  
Would you have gone if they had sent you to Korea ?  
No, if they had sent me to Korea, I wouldn't have gone.
4. kina ?  
koriyen bhaashaa sikna garho hunchha bhanne sunekole.  
Why ?  
Because I've heard that it's difficult to learn Korean.
5. phijimaa paThaaeko bhae ni ?  
tyahāa paThaaeko bhae ta jaanthe.  
What if they had sent you to Fiji ?  
I would have gone if they had sent me there.

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. jimji, tapaaallaai tapaaalko gaa<br>kasto laagyo ?<br>malaai mero gaaṁ asaadhyai man<br>paryo.   | Hi Jim ! How do you like your<br>village ?<br>I like my village very much.                                      |
| 2. tyahākaa maanchheharu ni ?<br>uniharu pani ekdam milansaar<br>rahechhan.   | How about the people there ?<br>I found them also very friendly.  |
| 3. uniharu milansaar nabhaeko<br>bhae tapaaḥ ke garnu hunthyo ?<br>ma raamro kaam garera uniharu-<br>rulaai khushi paarna koshis<br>garthē. | What would you have done if they<br>weren't friendly ?<br>I would have tried to please them<br>by working well. |
| 4. tyahāā kunai kaam nai nabhaeko<br>bhae ?<br>mero aphismaa saruwaa maagi<br>patra lekhthē.  | How about if there wasn't any<br>thing to do ?<br>I would have written to my office<br>asking for a transfer.   |

#### COMPREHENSION :-

- (a) hijo sinemaa herna bhanera ma sinemaa halmaa gae. tara shani-  
baar bhaekole asaadhyai bhiD rahechha, TikaT paaiena. 'black' maa  
khojeko bhae ki bihnanai gaeko bhae paanthy hola. malaai  
'black' maa TikaT lina man laagena. tyasaile sinemaa naherikanai  
pharkē.

#### QUESTIONS:-

1. hijo kahāā jaanu bhayo ?
2. kina ?
3. TikaT paaiyo ta ?

4. kina paaiyena ?
5. bihaanai gaeko bhae paainthyo ?
- 6 'black' maa kineko bhae ni ?
7. tapaalle 'black' maa linu bhayo ta ?
8. sinemaa naherikanai pharkanu bhayo ?

(b) raambahadurko jaach arko haptaadekhi shuru hunchha. jaach najikai aakole u aaja bholi dinbhari ra raati pani abelaa samma paDhchha. pahiledekhi usle raamrosanga paDheko bhae ahile uslaai yeti dherai mihenat garnu pardainathyo. tara ke garne ? raambahadurko baani yastai chha. pohor saal u phel bhayo. iskulmaa dindinai gaeko bhae ra guruharule paDhaaeko sabai paTh raamro sanga paDheko bhae u phel hunnathyo, abasya pass hunthyo.

#### QUESTIONS:-

1. raam bahaadurko jaach kahile dekhi suru hunchha ?
2. u aaja bholi kina dherai mihenat garchha ?
3. pahile dekhi raamrosanga paDheko bhae uslaai ahile yeti dherai mihenat garnu parthyo ?
4. pohor saal u paass bhayo ki phel bhayo ?
5. ke gareko bahae u phhor saal pass hunthyo ?

#### GRAMMAR NOTES

1. The '...ekobhae' is a conditional structure indicating that the likelihood of the condition being fulfilled is impossible.

#### Examples:

masanga paisaa bhaeko bhae      If I had money I would have  
dherai saamaan kinthe.              bought a lot of things.

(I didn't have money so I didn't buy many things.)

or

(I wish I could buy things but I don't have any money)

2. 'sinemaa herna bhanera'. Note the use of 'bhanera', It does not mean anything here. One can simply say 'sinemaa herna'.

## Some Nepali Idioms

haawaa birgranu – to go crazy

usko haawaa bigreko chha – He has gone crazy.

hawaa khuskanu – to go crazy

chitta bujhnu – to be satisfied

chitta dukhnu – (of feelings) to be hurt

ākhaa chhalnu – to deceive

ākhaa chimlanu – 1. to be indifferent

2. to die

3. to ponder

4 not to think of the result

arti dinu – to advise

baadhaa dinu – to distrurb

chhori dinu – to give one's daughter, ie. in marriage

Dhog dinu to salute

dos dinu – to blame

dukkha dinu – to pester

ishsaaraa dinu – to hint

ākhaamaa haale pani na bijhaaunu – to be an extremely nice person

dikka garnu – to bother

hel chakryaaf garnu – to neglect

hit garnu – to do good

khissi garnu – to ridicule

sekhi garnu – to boast

sriganesh garnu – to start

haat haalnu 1. to meddle in

2. to undertake

baaTo hernu – to wait

haat hernu – to read hand (palm)

dikka hunu to be fed up



ek mukh hunu – to unite  
 naæk jaanu – to be disgraced  
 paramdhaam jaanu – to die  
 aDkal kaaTnu – to guess  
 din kaaTnu – to spend time  
 dukkha kaaTnu – to suffer  
 kuraa kaaTnu – to interrupt, to refuse  
 Taap kasnu – to run away  
 aalu khaanu – to fail  
 ghus khaanu – to take bribe  
 gotaa khaanu – to suffer  
 haawaa khaanu – to fail, to pass away.  
 kiryaa khaanu – to swear  
 kuraa khaanu – to agree  
 silTimur hhaanu – to die  
 khoiro khannu – to harass  
 bhed kholnu – to disclose  
 naak khumchyaaunu – to be unsatisfied  
 haat laagnu – to fall into one's hands  
 mukh laagnu – to answer back impudently  
 pachhi laagnu – to follow  
 udass laagnu – to be depressed  
 āakhā laagnu – to cast eyes upon  
 adhyaaro mukh laaunu – to look unhappy  
 chitta laaunu – to attend to  
 pattaā laaunu – to find out, discover  
 dhaak laaunu – to brag  
 kuraa laaunu – to tell tales  
 naali beli laaunu – to furnish details  
 ThaaDo ghāāTi laaunu – to drink alcoholic liquor  
 haat lamkaaunu – to steal

**mekh maarnu** – to defeat, to bring to one's senses

**haat paarnu** – to gain possession of

**chaal paaunu** – to come to know

**chet paaunu** – to become wise

**chhoro paaunu** to give birth to a son

**bhar parnu** – to depend

**chiso pasnu** – to suspect

**taalumaa aalu phalnu** – to have huge benefits without doing much

**mukh pharkaaunu** – to answer back insolently

**mukh phulaaunu** – to be angry

**ris phernu** – to avenge

**sekhi puryaaidinu** – to give the devil his due

**kaan samaatnu** – to take a solemn oath not to do something

**mukh samhaalnu** – to be careful in what one is saying

**mukh siunu** – to be quiet

**khuTTa taannu** – to die

**kulelam Thoknu** – to run away

**aakaasko phal** – an impossibility

**gobar ganesh** – stupid fellow, imbecile

## Adverbial Expressions :

- |                        |   |
|------------------------|---|
| 1. nithrukka bhijnu    | — to be wet through and through                     |
| 2. bhusukka birsanu    | — to forget completely                              |
| 3. ghuTukka nilnu      | — to swallow with a gulp                            |
| 4. jhanakka risaaunu   | — to get furiously angry; to lose one's temper      |
| 5. Tuplukka aaipugnu   | — to come unexpectedly; to come at the right moment |
| 6. Thasakaa parnu      | — to be proud; to be unwilling                      |
| 7. khutrukka marnu     | — to die instantly                                  |
| 8. jhasanga jhasikanu  | — to be startled                                    |
| 7. musukka hāasnu      | — to smile  |
| 10. pulukka hernu      | — to look askance; to look coyly at                 |
| 11. chasakka chaskanu  | — to have a sharp pain                              |
| 12. jurukka uThnu      | — to rise smartly                                   |
| 13. thapakka raakhnu   | — to put quietly                                    |
| 14. paTakka nabolnu    | — not to speak at all                               |
| 15. dhapakka balnu     | — to blaze up                                       |
| 16. hurkukka hunu      | — to be extremely desirous of                       |
| 17. phurukka parnu     | — to be delighted                                   |
| 18. talakka Talkanu    | — to shine brightly                                 |
| 17. pharakka pharkanu  | — to turn abruptly                                  |
| 20. jhaDanga risaaunu  | — to lose one's temper                              |
| 21. chharlanga dekhinu | — to be seen clearly                                |
| 22. gamakka parnu      | — to feel self-sufficient                           |
| 23. TuluTulu hernu     | — to look fixedly                                   |
| 24. chaTakka chhoDnu   | — to give up something abruptly                     |
| 25. kapaakap khaanu    | — to swallow right down                             |
| 26. akamakka parnu     | — to be dumbfounded                                 |

- 27. dhuru dhuru runu — to weep profusely
- 28. dhurukka ruwaaunu — to be a source of great trouble
- 29. laryaang lurung garnu— to saunter, loiter
- 30. khuru khuru garnu — to do steadily
- 31. suTukka bhannu — to tell secretly
- 32. Thikka parnu — to get ready
- ३३ Thikka paarnu — to make ready

## Common Proverbs

### chaltikaa ukhaanharu

1. raato raamro, guliyo miTho.  
Red is beautiful, sweet is delicious.
2. manako baha kasailai nakaha.  
Do not publish your troubles.
3. agulTole haaneko kukur bijuli chamkadaa tarsanchha.  
A dog struck by brand trembles at a flash of lightening.
4. hatpatko kaam latpat.  
A work done in a hurry ends in disarray.
5. murkhadekhi daiba pani Daraaũchha.  
Even a God is afraid of the fool.
6. waraalo laageko baaghlaai baachhaale pani khedchha.  
A run down tiger is chased even by a calf.
7. khaane mukhaai jungaale chhekdaina.  
The moustache does not stop the mouth eating.
8. jastaalaai tastai DhiDolaai nistai.  
Tit for tat.
9. siyo chornele bhiTTaa phorchha.  
He who steals a needle will break open a wall.
10. maagnelaaai taato bhaat.  
A beggar should not be a chooser.
11. baadarko haatmaa nariwal.  
A coconut in a monkey's hand.
12. kaaTeko ghaaumaa nun chuk.  
Adding insult to injury.
13. bhaagyamaa bhae goru pani byaũchha.  
If you are lucky, even your ox will give birth.
14. haattiko mukhmaa jiraa.  
A drop in the ocean.
15. nazchna jaandaina aagan TeDho.  
A bad carpenter quarrels with his tools.

16. hagi sakyo baaTo dekhyo.  
After death the doctor.
17. mukhmaa raam raam bagalimaa chhuraa.  
A honey tongue a heart of a gall.
18. jasto ropyo ustai phalchha.  
As you sow so you reap.
19. bheDaa bheDaasanga baakhraa baakhraasanga.  
Birds of the same feather flock together.
20. sautaako risle poiko kaakhmaa mutne.  
Burn one's house to frighten away the mice.
21. chhoro paaune kahile kahile bhoTo siune ahile.  
Counting the chickens before they are hatched.
22. ghāāTi heri haaD nilnu.  
Cut your coat according to your cloth.
23. des gunako bhes kapaal gunako kesh.  
Do in Rome as the Romans do.
24. chhan geDi sabai meri chhainan geDi sabai Tedhi.  
Fair weather friends.
25. mareko baaghko junghaa taanne.  
Flogging a dead horse.
26. aūlo didaa Dudulno nilne  
Give him an inch and he will ask for a mile.
27. aaphu bhalo ta jagat bhalo.  
Good mind good find.
28. nahunu bhandaa kaano maamaa niko.  
Something is better than nothing.
29. paanimaa basi ghohi saga bairabhaab.  
It is hard to live in Rome and strife with Pope.
30. jasto boT ustai phal.  
Like father like son.
31. ma taakchhu muDho bancharo taakchha ghūDo.  
Man proposes God disposes.
32. jasko sakti usko bhakti.  
Might is right.

33. **achaanoko pir khukurile haandaina.**  
No one knows the weight of another's burden.
24. **aaphno aangko bhalsi nadekhne, arkaako aangko jumraa dekhne.**  
No one looks to his own fault.
35. **ek dinko paahuna miTho miTho khaa, dui dinko paahunaa jaso**  
**taso khaa, tin dinko paahunaa jataa sukai jaa.**  
One day a guest, two days a guest, three days a pest.
36. **kasaiko boli kasaiko gaali.**  
One man's meat is another man's poison.
37. **lobhale laabh laabhle bilaap.**  
Penny wise and pound foolish.
38. **maukaa aaachha parkhadaina.**  
Time and tide wait for no man.
39. **ek pantha do kaaj.**  
To kill two birds with one stone.
40. **dherai khaae ghiu pani amilo hunchha.**  
Too much of anything is bad.
41. **iswar daahinaa bhae kasko ke laagchha.**  
When God is kind all are favorable.
42. **saas hunjel aas.**  
While there is life there is hope.
43. **maamaaki ghoDi meri hi hi.**  
To be proud of another's property.

# Glossary

Below is a list of words used in this book. The number in brackets refer to the lesson in which the word first appears.

## (a)

aaitabaar (11)	sunday	aaja (4)	today
āākhaa (12)	eye	aalu (8)	potato
aamaa (2)	mother	āāp (6)	mango
aaphno (3)	own	aaraam garnu (10)	to rest
aaune (11)	coming, next	aaunu (3)	to come
aba (7)	now	aDhaai(20)	two and half
agaaDi (10)	in front of	aghi (7)	since, ago
aglaa, aglo 1(2)	tall	alchhi (10)	lazy
aliali (6)	a little, a few	amilo (2)	sour
anchal (18)	zone	anDaa (13)	egg
anekaū (37)	several	ani (4)	and then
anushaashan (36)	discipline	assadhyai (10)	extremely
asanTol (5)	asanTole (street in Kathmandu)	asti (11)	day before yesterday
atyanta (34)	very much	audhi (32)	extremely
ausadhi (10)	medicine		

## (b)

baa (2)	father	bahini (3)	younger sister
baahira (3)	out, outside	bazaar (4)	market
baalnu (7)	to light	bajai (17)	grand nmother
bheTnu (23)	to meet	baje (4)	O'clock (stating /asking time of an event)
baaremaa (28)	about		
baas (32)	shelter		
baaTa (4)	from	bajyo (8)	O'clock



baaTo	road, path, trail	baliyo (27)	strong
bachchha (18)	chi'd, young ones	banaaunu (22)	to make
baDhi	(27) more, better	banda garnu (2)	to close, to shut
badmaas	(26) mischievous	baneko (13)	made
bahaal	(21) rent	barsha (13)	year
baTTaa (5)	packet	bas (7)	bus
batti	light, lamp	bidaa (4)	holiday
bechnu (27)	to sell	bidesi (27)	foreigner
bekaar (27)	jobless	bidyaarthi (0)	student
belaayat (16)	England	bihaa (13)	marriage,
belukaa (4)	evening		wedding
bhaaDaa (28)	rent	bihaanako (8)	morning meal
bhaai (3)	younger brother	khaanaa	
bhaansaa garnu (253)	to eat a meal	bihibaar (11)	Thursday
bhaashaa (8)	language	bigranu	to be broken
bhaat (17)	cooked rice	bigyaan (26)	science
bhayo	became	bish (35)	poison
bhiD (27)	crowd	bisaya (27)	subject
bhitra (3)	in, inside	biu	seed
bhoklaagnu (10)	to feel hungry	bokaa (25)	uncastrated male
bhoj (25)	feast		goat
bholi (4)	tomorrow	bolnu (8)	to speak
bihaana (4)	morning	budhabaar (11)	Wednesday
bhuraa (25)	fingerlings	byabahaar (26)	treatment
		byawasthaa (37)	system

(c)

chaaD (25)	festival	charpi (21)	latrine
chaahidaina (6)	is not needed	chaa (1)	is
chaalis (7)	forty	chaaina (2)	is not
chāahi (3)	one (specified)	chhan (3)	are
chaamal (4)	uncooked rice	chharlangai (25)	clearly

chaar (3)	four	chhetra (37)	region, area
chaDhnu (24)	to climb	chheu (32)	side
chakki (18)	tablet	chhiTo (21)	fast, early
chalaanu (22)	to drive	chhoDidinu	to leave
charaa (12)	bird	chhoraa (13)	son
chamchhaa (16)	spoon	chhori	daughter
chhoTo (12)	short (opp. of long)	chinyaa (17)	Chinese
chhuTTi (24)	vacation	chinnu (23)	to know, to recognize
chiDiyaa khaanaa (20)	zoo	chiso	cold
chij (5)	cheese	chiTThi (7)	letter
chin (18)	China	chiyaa (2)	tea
chini (3)	sugar	churoT (5)	cigarette

(d)

daai (3)	brother (older)	dherai jaso (7)	mostly, usually
DaakTar (23)	doctor	Dhilo (21)	slow, late
daal bhaat (4)	lentils and cooked rice	Dhokaa (2)	door
dāāyaa (12)	right (opp. to left)	dhumdhaam (10)	intensively
dahi (17)	yogurt	dhunu (22)	pompously
dakchhin (18)	south	dikka laagnu (27)	to wash
Dar laagnu (24)	to be afraid	din (7)	to feel sad
das (4)	ten	din bhari (17)	day
dasāai (25)	Durga puja festival	dinu (10)	day long
Dat pen (6)	ball point pen	disaa (10)	to give
DeDh (20)	one and half	disaa laagnu	stool
dekhi (6)	from	diūso (4)	to have diarrhoea
dekhaanu (23)	to show	dublo (21)	day time
dekhinu (24)	to be seen	dubai (14)	(afternoon)
dekhnu (8)	to see	dudh (4)	thin, slim
		dui (3)	both
			milk
			two

Deraa (4)	apartment	dukhnu (10)	to ache, to have
desh (18)	country		to pain.
dhaaro (21)	water tap	durgaa (25)	one of the Hindu
dharma (25)	religion		Goddesses.
dherai (6)	many, a lot of		

(e)

ek (3)	one	ekai (21)	same
ek chhin (22)	a moment, a while.	eklai (10)	alone
ekdam (14)	very much	ek paTak (23)	once

(g)

gaai (12)	cow	galaichaa (13)	carpet
gāājaa (27)	marijuana	garmi (21)	hot
gaarho (20)	difficult	garnu (1)	to do
gaarho laagnu (3)	to find difficult	gate (17)	date
gaaũ (7)	village	ghaDi (7)	watch
gaeko (33)	last (as in past)	ghanTaa (8)	hour
gaĩDaa (6)	a brand of cigarette (lit. rhinoceros)	ghanTaagar	Clock-Tower
		ghar (1)	home, house
		ghoDe jaatraa (10)	horse racing ceremony
		ghumnu (24)	to roam around

(h)

haami (7)	we	hijo (0)	yesterday
haat (19)	hand	hocho (12)	short (as opp. to tall)
hajaaraũ (30)	thousands		

hajur (1)	yes (Polite)	himaal (14)	mountain (snow peak)
haraaunu (24)	to lose	hoina (1)	isn't (definitive)
harek (30)	every	holaa (4)	may be, might be
haptaa (7)	week	hū (15)	am
hawaaipatra (30)	aerogram	hun (3)	are
hernu (7)	to look		
ho (1)	is (definitive)		
hiDera (18)	on foot		

(i)

itihaas (27)	history
--------------	---------

(j)

jaannu (14)	to know	jahile pani (32)	always, all the time
jaanu (3)	to go	jhiknu (17)	to take out
jammaa (5)	total	jholaa (1)	bag
janasankhyaa (37)	population	jhyaal (3)	window
jangali (35)	wild	jor (27)	pair
jaslaai pani (32)	to any one	jukaa (24)	leech
jasto (21)	like	jun pani (32)	anything
jati (18)	about	jwaro (10)	fever
jattikai (21)	like (that)		
jhanDai (14)	almost		

(k)

kaagati (8)	lemon	kataatira (18)	in what direction
kaalo (1)	black	katiwaTaa (3)	how many
kaam (7)	work	kattiko (29)	how much
kaam garnu (15)	to work	ke (1)	what
kaapi (1)	notebook		

kaarkhaanaa (13)	factory	kehi	any, something
kāāTaa (19)	fork	keraa (7)	banana
kaaryaalaya (36)	office	khaajaa (8)	snack
kaaTnu (25)	to cut	khaali (22)	empty, vacant
kahāā (1)	where	khaam (6)	envelope
kahile (7)	when	khaanaa (14)	food, meal
kahile dekhi (7)	how long, since	khaanu (2)	to eat, to drink
	when	khairo (12)	brown
kahile kahī (8)	sometimes	khalti (3)	pocket
kahile pani (15)	never	khasi (26)	goat
kalam (1)	pen	khel (14)	game
kamaaunu (22)	to earn, to make	khelnu (8)	to play
	money	khojnu (28)	to look for
kamij (1)	shirt	kholnu (1)	to open
kapaal (12)	hair of the head	khub (24)	very (emphatic)
kaphi (4)	coffee	khukuri (17)	Gorkha
karoD (37)	ten millions		knife
kasari (7)	how	khushi paarnu (40)	to please
kasko (1)	whose	khuTTaa (12)	leg
kasto (1)	what color	ki (4)	or
kina (4)	why	ko laagi (17)	for
kinaar (24)	beach	kohi (27)	anybody,
kinabhane (25)	because		somebody
kinmel garnu (22)	to shop	koThaa (11)	room
kisaan (25)	farmer	krishi (37)	agriculture
kisim (27)	kind, type	kukhuraa (20)	chicken
kitaab (1)	book	kun (3)	which
klaas (4)	class	kunni (13)	don't know
ko (3)	who	kyaalenDar (4)	calendar
ko ko (4)	who (plural)		

(1)

laakh (37)	one hundred thousands	lekhnu (4)	to write
------------	-----------------------	------------	----------

laamo (12)	long	linu (2)	to take
		lugaa (17)	dress
		lyaaaidinu (6)	to bring for
lagidinu (32)	to take for some one		someone
lagiraakhnu (37)	bring along		

(m)

ma (2)	I	maddat garnu (35)	to assist
maa (3)	at, in, on	madhye (27)	among, between
maachhaa (35)	fish	mahāgo (5)	expensive
maadhyamik		mahinaa (8)	month
biddyaalaya (35)	secondary school	maile	I (in past tense)
maagnu (40)	to ask for	malaai (2)	to me, for me
maanabiki (36)	humanities	mandir (20)	temple
shaashtra		mangalbaar (11)	Tuesday
maanchhe (25)	man	manlaagnu (14)	to want
maannu (25)	to follow	man parnu (14)	to like
maarnu (35)	to kill	mantraalaya (38)	ministry
maasu (8)	meat	matsya bikaas	Fisheries
maatira (5)	only		Development
maddat	help, assistance	kendra- (35)	Centre
mausam (21)	weather	majjaa (25)	fun
meraa	mine (plural)	milansaar (40)	friendly
mero (1)	my	mineT (8)	minute
mihenat garnu (40)	to work hard	miThaai (8)	sweets
		mohar (5)	half a rupee

(n)

naam (1)	name	nau (7)	nine
najaane (3)	will not go	naumaaleko (34)	unboiled
najik (18)	near	nayaā (17)	new

najikai (18)	nearby	ni (1)	and how about
naksaa (18)	map	nibhaaunu (7)	to turn off (light)
namaste (1)	hello, good bye, greeting	nikkai (24)	very (emphatic)
nambari (30)	a hundred rupee	niko hunu (34)	to be well, to be cured
napaDhne (4)	note	nira (3)	near
naraakhne (4)	will not read	nuhaaunu (22)	to bathe
	will not put	nyaano (27)	warm

(o)

oraalo	downhill
--------	----------

(p)

pāāch (4)	five	parchha (6)	it costs
paainchha (5)	is available	pardaina	neg. of parchha
paakeT (6)	packet	pariwaar (13)	family
paalnu (35)	to raise	parsi (11)	day after tomorrow
paani (2)	water		
paani parnu (21)	to rain	pasal (4)	store
paaunu (7)	to get	paTak (18)	times
pashchim (18)	west	paThaaunu	to send
pachchis (7)	twenty five	patra	letter
pachhaaDi (18)	behind	patrikaa (27)	newspaper
paDhaaunu (8)	to teach	pauDi khelnu (23)	to swim
paDhnu (1)	to read	paune (4)	quarter to
pahulo (25)	first	paune saat	quarter to seven
paisaa (6)	pice	pesaa (37)	occupation
palTinu (32)	to lie down	peT (10)	stomach
pandhraū (25)	fifteenth	phalphul (5)	fruit
pani (2)	also	pharak (21)	different
pharkaaunu (22)	to return something	pohor saal (24)	last year
		pokhari (35)	pond

pharkanu (4)	to return	prasiddha (24)	famous
pheri (8)	rain	pratisat (37)	percent
phohor (7)	dirty	pugnu (16)	to be enough
phul (5)	egg, flower	pugnu (27)	to arrive
phursad (26)	free time	pujaa (25)	worship
phuT ball (4)	foot ball	puraano (17)	old
pisaab garnu (22)	to urinate	purba (18)	east

(r)

ra (8)	and	raksi laagnu (17)	to get drunk
raaj maarga (37)	high way	ramaailo (10)	pleasant, scenic
raajya (3)	state	ras (37)	juice
raakhnu (3)	to put	rojnu (40)	choose
raastriya (36)	national	roknu (27)	to stop
raato (3)	red	roTi (11)	bread
rahar (35)	desire	rusi (36)	Russian
raksi (4)	home made spirit		

(s)

saaDhe (6)	half (beyond one)	sae (21)	hundred
saaDhe das (4)	half past ten	sahar (3)	town, city
saat (4)	seven	sajaaya (36)	punishment
saaThi (20)	sixty	sajilai (30)	easily
saahuji (5)	store keeper	saknu (30)	to be able to
saathi (4)	friend	salaad (8)	salad
saaTi dinu (35)	to change	samaaj saastra (30)	sicology
saaTnu (15)	to trade, to change	samma (4)	as far as, until
sabai (12)	all	samudra (24)	sea
sabbhandaa (21)	the most (superlative)	sanchai (2)	fine, well
		sanga (15)	with
		sanibaar (11)	Saturday



sachib (38)	secretary	sanskrit (28)	sanskrit
saDak (18)	road	sanskriti (36)	culture
sadar mukaam (35)	district centre	saphaa (9)	clean
sadhal (8)	always	sarkaari (23)	official
sarkaari (38)	government (adj)	sisaakalam (6)	pencil
saruwaa (40)	transfer	sisi (6)	bottle
sattari (20)	seventy	sukaaunu (35)	to dry
sawaa pāach	quarter past five	sombaar (11)	Monday
saya (13)	hundred	sukrabaar (11)	Friday
seto (1)	white	sundar (30)	beautiful
siddhinu (26)	to be finished	suninu (25)	to be heard
sikchhyak (33)	teacher	suntalaa (2)	tangerine, orange
sikchhyaal (38)	education	sutnu (8)	to sleep
siknu (7)	to learn	swayam sewak	volunteer
sinemaa (4)	movie	syaaau (2)	apple

(t)

ta (1)	then	thiyo (11)	was
taal (2)	lake	terha (11)	thirteen
taalim (30)	training	ti (2)	those
taamaang (39)	Tamang	tibbati (6)	TibetTan
taas (6)	playing cards	Tikaa (25)	red mark worn on the forehead
taato (5)	hot		
Taauko (12)	head	timi (3)	you (familiar)
talab (29)	salary	tin (3)	three
tapaalko	your, yours	trikhaa laagnu (10)	to feel thirsty
Tep (4)	tape	tis (9)	thirty
Thaaū (29)	place	tyas din (28)	that day
thaahaa hunu (7)	to know	tyaspachhi (9)	then
thakaai (30)	fatigue	tyati belaa (28)	at that time
thakaai laagnu (10)	to feel tired	Turist (16)	tourist
Thegaan (23)	certain	tyattikaa (15)	as much as that
Thik (6)	O. K. allright		

(u)

u	ie	usle (3)	he, she (subject)
uhi (32)	the same, the very	uso bhæ (25)	then, if so
	one	ustai (29)	just like that
ukaalo (39)	uphill	uThaaunu (34)	to wake up
umaaleko (16)	boiled	uThnu (8)	to get up
usko (3)	his	uttar (18)	nor:h

(w)

wahāako (1)	his, her, hers.
-------------	-----------------

(y)

yahāā (2)	here	yi (2)	these
yasko (28)	its, of this	yo (1)	this

## DAYS OF THE WEEK

Sunday	– aaitabaar
Monday	– sombaar
Tuesday	– mangalbaar
Wednesday	– budhabaar
Thursday	– bihibaar
Friday	– shukrabaar
Saturday	– shanibaar

## NAMES OF MONTHS

Nepali months vary from 27 to 32 days in length, and any one month may have a different number of days from year to year. Thus no exact correspondence with the western calendar is possible.

baisaakh	– mid-April	to	mid-May
jeTh	– mid-May	to	mid-June
asaar	– mid-June	to	mid-July
saaun	– mid-July	to	mid-August
bhadau	– mid-August	to	mid-September
asoj	– mid-September	to	mid-October
kaattik	– mid-October	to	mid-November
mangsir	– mid-November	to	mid-December
paush, pus	– mid-December	to	mid-January
maagh	– mid-January	to	mid-February
phaagun	– mid-February	to	mid-March
chaitra, chait	– mid-March	to	mid-April

## LAND AREA, WEIGHT, MEASURE,

### A. LAND AREA

#### 1. Terai

1 bighaa 20 kaTThaa

1 kaTThaa 20 dhur

1 bighaa  $1\frac{2}{3}$  acres (approx.)

$\frac{2}{3}$  hectre (approx.)

#### 2. Hills, Kathmandu

8 ropani 1 acre (approx.)

### C. VOLUME

#### 1. Terai

1 man 20 kaTThaa (paddy)

#### 2. Hills, Kathmandu

1 muri 20 paathi

1 paathi 8 maanaa

1 maanaa 10 muThi

2 maanaa 1 kuruwaa

### B. WEIGHTS

#### 1. Terai

1 man 40 ser

1 ser 4 paau

1 paau 4 kanuwaa

1 kanuwaa 5 tolaa

1 man 82 lb. (approx.)

1 ser 2 lb. (approx.)

#### 2. Hills

1 dhaarni 2 bisauli

1 dhaarni 5 lb. (approx.)

#### 3. Kathmandu

1 dhaarni 12 paau

1 dhaarni 5 lb. (approx.)

### SPECIAL NUMBERS

$\frac{1}{2}$  aadhaa

$1\frac{1}{2}$  DeDh, SaaDhe ek

$2\frac{1}{2}$  aDhaai, saaDhe dui

Fractions are read as follows

$\frac{5}{8}$  paaachkaa muni aaTh

## PARTICLES

WORD	USE	USED AFTER
na	emphatic	imperative
ni	emphatic questioning, reminding	verb noun, pronoun
ta	emphatic contrasting	verb noun, pronoun, adjective, adverb
po	emphatic, contrasting	noun pronoun, adjective, adverb, participle
nai	emphatic	noun, pronoun, adjective, adverb
ki	questioning	verb, adjective
ra	doubtfully refers to something said/ information from the second, or a third person	verb all parts of speech
chaahī	emphatic and pausing,	noun, pronoun, adjective,
chaahine	contrasting	adverb

## NUMERALS

1 –	ek	31 –	ektis
2 –	dui	32 –	battis
3 –	tin	33 –	tettis
4 –	chaar	34 –	chāutis
5 –	pāāch	35 –	paitis
6 –	chha	36 –	chhattis
7 –	saat	37 –	saltis
8 –	aaTh	38 –	aThtis
9 –	nau	39 –	unanchaalis
10 –	das	40 –	chaalis
11 –	eghaara	41 –	ekchaalis
12 –	baarha	42 –	bayaalis
13 –	terha	43 –	trichaalis
14 –	chaudha	44 –	chawaalis
15 –	pandhara	45 –	paltaalis
16 –	sorha	46 –	chayaalis
17 –	satra	47 –	satchaalis
18 –	aThaara	48 –	aThchaalis
19 –	unnais, unis	49 –	unanchaas
20 –	bis	50 –	pachaas
21 –	ekkaais	51 –	ekaaunna
22 –	baais	52 –	baaunna
23 –	teis	53 –	tripanna
24 –	chaubis	54 –	chaunna
25 –	pachchis	55 –	pachpanna
26 –	chhabbis	56 –	chhapanna
27 –	sattaais	57 –	santaaunna
28 –	aThThaais	58 –	anThaaunna
29 –	unantis, untis	59 –	unansaaThi
30 –	tis	60 –	saaThi

61 –	eksaThThi	81 –	ekaaasi
62 –	baisaThThi	82 –	bayaasi
63 –	trisaThThi	83 –	triyaasi
64 –	chausaThThi	84 –	chauraasi
65 –	paIsaThThi	85 –	pachaasi
66 –	chhaisaThThi	86 –	chhayaasi
67 –	satsaThThi	87 –	sattaasi
68 –	aThsaThThi	88 –	aThaasi
69 –	unansattari	89 –	unaanabbe
70 –	sattari	90 –	nabbe
71 –	ekahattar	91 –	ekaanabbe
72 –	bahattar	92 –	bayaanabbe
73 –	trihattar	93 –	triyaanabbe
74 –	chauhattar	94 –	chauraanabbe
75 –	pachahatta	95 –	panchaanabbe
76 –	chhahattar	96 –	chhayaanabbe
77 –	satahattar	97 –	santaanabbe
78 –	aThahattar	98 –	anThaanabbe
79 –	unaasi	99 –	unaansae
80 –	asi	100 –	sae, saya

1000	—	hajaar
10000	—	das hajaar
100000	—	laakh
1000000	—	das laakh

### Nepali Numtars

१ २ ३ ४ ५ ६ ७ ८ ९ १०

## Ordinal Numbers :

1st	pahilo	19th	unnisaū
2nd	dosro	20th	bisaū
3rd	tesro	21st	ekkaaaisaū
4th	chautho	22nd	baaisaū
5th	paachaaū	23rd	teisaū
6th	chhaiThaū	24th	chaubisaū
7th	saataū	25th	pachchisaū
8th	aaThaū	30th	tisaū
9th	nawaū	40th	chaalisāū
10th	dasaū	50th	pachaasaū
11th	eghaaraū	100th	sayaū
12th	baaraū	1000th	hajaaraū
12th	terhaū		
14th	chaudhaū		
15th	pandhraū		
16th	sorhaū		
17th	saTraū		
18th	aThaaraū		



# General Vocabulary

## ANIMALS

bat	– chamero	leech	– jukaa
bird	– charaa	mouse/rat	– musaa
dog	– kukur	snake	– sarpa
fish	– maachhaa	tame pig	– sungur
fowl/chicken	– kukhuraa	wild pig	– bādel
frog	– bhyaagutaa	pig (improved)	– bangur

## BODY ACTIVITIES / SENSATIONS

be afraid	– Dar laagnu,	chew (food, betel)–	chapaaunu
	– Daraaunu	drink	– piunu, khaanu
be angry	– risaaunu	eat	– khaanu
be asleep	– nidaaunu	go to sleep	– sutnu
be awake	– jaagnu	have a fever	– joro aaunu
be cold	– chiso laagnu	hurt	– dukhnu
be hot	– taato hunu	itch	– chilaaunu
be sleepy	– nidraa laagnu	listen/hear	– sunnu
be tired	– thaaknu, thakaai	shiver	– kaamnu
	laagnu	sniff/smell	– sūghnu
bite (piece of food)	– Toknu	suck	– chusnu
		swallow	– nilnu
bleed	– ragat aaunu	sweat/prespire	– pasinaa aaunu
blow (a fire)	– phuknu	wake up	– biājhanu
breathe	– saas phernu	watch, see	– hernu

## BODY PARTS

Adam's apple	rudra ghanTi	back	– piThyū
ankle	goli gāaThaa	backbone	– DhaaD
arm	paakhuraa	beard	– daarhi

belly	– peT	heel	kurkuchchha
blood	ragat	jaw	– bangaaro
body hair	– raũ	knee	– ghũDaa
bone	haaD	leg	– khutta
breast	– chhaati	mouth	– mukh
chest	– chhaati	navel	– naaiTo
chin	– chinDo	neck	– ghāaTi
ear	– kaan	nose	– naak
egg	– phul	palm	hatkelaa
elbow	kuhino	rib	– karang
eye	– āakhaa	shoulder	kāadh
face	– mukh	skin	– chhaalaa
fat	– boso	tail	– puchchhar
feather	pwāakh	tears	– āasu
finger	– aūlaa	teeth	dāat
finger nail	nang	thigh	– tighraa
flesh meat	– maasu	throat	– ghāaTi
foot	– khuTTaa	thumb	buDhi aūlaa
forehead	– nidhaar	toes	– aūlaa
hair (of head)	– kapaal	tongue	– jibro
hand	haat	waist	– kammar
head	– Taauko	wing	– pakheTaa

## COLOUR

black	– kaalo	green	hariyo
blue	nilo	light	– ujyaalo
bright	– chahakilo	orange	– suntalaa rang
brown	khairo, kailo	purple	– pyaaji
clean	– saphaa	red	– raato
dark	– ādhyaaro	white	seto
dirty	phohar	yellow	– pahelo
		colorful	– rangi changi

## Description

bad	– naraamro	quickly	– ChhiTo
		quiet (children)	– shaanta
bad/useless (things)–	kharaab/kaam-	rotten food	– kuheko, saDeko
	nalaagne	sick	– biraami
cold (water)	– chiso	silent (person)	– nabolne
dry (cloth, wood)–	sukeko	slow	– Dhilo
good/edible (food)–	raamro	soft (call)	– masino (swor)
	– khaana hune	sour	– amilo
good (things)	– asal, kaamlaagne	strong	– baliyo
hard (firm)	– kaDaa, saarho	sweet	– guliyo
		talkative (pers.)	– dherai bolne.
hot (water)	– taato		kurauTe
hot tasting	– piro	tight	– kasieko
bitter	– tito	warm (water)	– taato
loose	– khukulo	weak	– kachchaa
loud (call)	– Thulo		kamjor, nirbaliyo
new (thing)	– nayaa	well	– sancho
noisy (children)	– chakchake	wet (cloth)	– bhijeko

## Directions

across	– paari	out	– baahira
along	– saraasar	over	– maathi
away from	TaaDhaa	south	– dakchhin
down	– tala	towards	tira
east	purba	up	– maathi
into	hitra, amaa	west	– paschim
north	uttar		

## Flowers

asters	– godaabari	orchids	-- sungaabhaa
bunch	– jhuppaa	rose	– gulaab
dahlia	– laahure phul	sunflower	– suryamukhi
flower	– phul	rhododendron	– gurâās
jasmine	– chameli	marygold	– sayapatri
lily	– kumud	poinsettia	– laalupaate
lotus	– kamal		

## Fruits

apple	– syaau	mango	– āāp
apple-pear	– naaspaati	muskmelon	– kharbujaa
apricot	– khurpaani	orange	– junaar
banaana	– keraa	papaya	– mewaa
cashews	– kaaju	peach	– aaru
coconut	– nariwal	peanut	– badaam
custard apple	– sariphaa	persimon	– haluwaabed
date	– chhohoraa	pineapple	– bhuikaTahar
grape	– angur	plum	– aarubakhaDaa
grapefruit	– bhogaTe	pomegranate	– aanaar
guava	– ambaa, belauti	raisin	-- kismis, daakh
jackfruit	– rukh kaTahar	tamarind	– amili
lemon/lime (large)	– nibuwaa	tangerine	– suntalaa
lemon/lime (small)	– kaagati	walnut	– okhar
lichi	– lichi	watermelon	– tarbujaa

## Household Vocabulary

to boil (things)	– usinnu	to baste	– maasuma/tarkaa
			– rimaajhol haalnu
		to beat (eggs, etc)	– pheTnu

to boil (water)	– umaalnu	cotton cloth	– suti kapaDaa
to buy	– kinnu	courtyard	– aagan, chok
to clean	– saphaa garnu	cups & saucers	– pyaala ra
to cook	– pakaaunu		– rikaabi
to cut up into pieces	– Tukraa paarnu	curtain	– pardaa
to dust	– saphaa garnu	door	– Dhokaa
to fry (meat, vegetables)	– taarnu	drainage	– Dhal
		floor	– bhul
to make the bed	– ochhyaan milaaunu		
to marinate	– molnu	fork	– kaaTaa
to measure	– naapnu	frying pan	– taawaa
to mix	– misaaunu	garbage	– phohor
to peel	– taachhnu	garden	– bagaichha
to prepare	– taiyaar garnu	hot	– taato
to put	– raakhnu	house rent	– bhaaDaa,
to scrub	– maajhnu, ghoTnu		– baahaal,
to shake	– hallaaunu		– kiraayaa
to slice	Tukraa paarnu	kerosene	– maTTitel
to stew	– suruwa pakaaunu	kettle	– kitli, chiyaadaani
to stir	– pheTnu	knife	– chakku
to sweep	– saphaa garnu,	lamp	– batti
	– baDhaarnu	landlord	– gharpati
to throw	– phyaaaknu	latch	– chheskini,
to wash	– dhunu, pakhaalnu		– chukul
almirah	– aalmaari, daraaj	lid	– birko
ashtray	– kharaani daani	living-room	– baiThak kooThaa
bathroom	– sauchaalaya	luke warm	– mantaato
blanket	– kambal	match	– salaai
building	– bhawan	mirror	– ainaa
chair	– mech, kursi	needle	– siyo
cold	– chiso	pillow	– takiyaa, siraani
corner	– kunaa	plate	– thaal

plate (small)	– rikaapi	strainer	– chhaanne
pots & pans	– bhāāDaa KūDaa	tap	– dhāaraa
quilt	– sirak	toilet	– charpi
room	– koThaa	utensils	– bhāāDaa kūDaa
safety pin	– huk, khip	wall	– bhittaa, parkhaal
scissor	– kaichi	waste	– kasingar
sheet (bed)	– tannaa	well	– inaar
spoon	– chamchaa	window	– jhyaal
steps	– khuDkila	wool (for knitting)–	un
stove (kerosene)	– isTov	woolen cloth	– uni kapāDaa
storey	talaa		

### Insects

ant	– kamilaa	grasshopper	– phaTengra
butterfly	– putali	louse	– jumraa
firefly	– junkiri	mosquito	– laamkhuTTe
flea	– upiyāā	scorpion	– bichchhi
fly	– jhingaa	spider	– maakuraa

### Kinship Terms

beloved	– premikaa	brother's son	bhatijaa
bride	– dulahi	brother's daughter–	bhatiji
bride-groom	– dulaahaa	caste	jaat
brother	– bhai	close kin	– saakhhai
(younger)		daughter	– chhoi
brother (elder)	daai, daaju	daughters' husband–	juwaaI
brother's wife	– buhaari	family	pariwaar
(younger)		father	– baa, buwaa
brother's wife (elder)–	bhaaju		

father-in-law	– sasuraa	husband's younger	
father-in-law's	– sasuraali	sister	– nanda
house		kin	– naaatedaar
father's elder-	– Thulo baa	kinship	– naataa
brother		lover	– premi
father's elder	–	mother	– aamaa
brother's wife-	Thuli aamaa	mother-in-law	– saasu
father's younger		mother's brother	– maamaa
brother	– kaakaa	mother's brother's	
father's younger	– kaaki	wife	– maaiju
brother's wife		mother's sister	– saanima
father's sister	– phupu	mother's sisters'	
father's sister's husband-	phupaaju	husband	– saanobaa
grand-daughter	– naatini	mother's father	– baaje
grand-father	– baaje	mother's mother	– bajai
grand-mother	– bajai	sister (elder)	– didi
grand-son	– naati	sister (younger)	– bahini
guest	– paahunaa	sister's husband	– bhinaaju
husband	– logne, srimaan	(elder)	
husband's elder		sister's husband	
brother	– jeThaaju	(younger)	– juwaai
husband's elder		sister's son	– bhaanjaa
brother's wife	– jeThaani	sister's daughter	– bhaanji
husband's younger		step mother	– sauteni aamaa
brother	– dewar	son	– chhoraa
husband's younger		son's wife	– buhaari
brother's wife-	deuraani	wife	– swaasni, srimati
husband's elder		wife's brother	– saalaa
sister	– aamaaju	wife's sister	– saali

## LOCATIONS

back	– pachhaaDi	middle/center	– bichmaa
bottom/lower	– tallo	right	– daahine, daayāā
corner	– kunaa	side	– chhəu
front	– agaaDi	there	– tyahāā
here	– yahāā	top/upper	– maathillo
left	– debre, baayāā		

## MANIPULATIONS

bend (a stick)	bangyaaunu	divide/share	– bhəag lagaanu
bind/tie up	bāādhnu	draw/ sketch	– chitra khichhnu
bore (a hole)	– pwaal paarnu	empty out	– khaali paarnu
break (rope)	– chūDaaunu	examine	– jāachnu
build (house)	– banaaunu	extinguish	– nibhaaunu
bury (something)–	gaaDnu	fight	– laDnu, jhagaDaa
butcher (an animal)–	maarnu		garnu
buy	– kinnu	fill (a vessel)	– bharnu
comb (hair)	– kornu	fold (cloth)	– paTyaaunu
count	– gannu	hit	– haannu, piTnu
cover	– Dhaaknu	hold	– samaatnu
crush	– nichornu	hunt	– sikaar khelnu
cut (food into		join	– missinu, joDnu
pieces)	– Tukraa paarnu	kick	– laat hvannu
cut (rope)	– kaaTnu	kill	– maarnu
destroy (house,	bigaarnu	light(fire, lamp)	– baalnu
fence)		lose	– haraaunu
dig (a hole)	– khannu	make	– banaaunu
dig up (root, crop)–	khannu	mark	– chino lagaanu
discover/find	– pattaa lagaanu		



measure	– naapnu	sharpen	– tikhaarnu
mend/repair	– bannaaunu	shoot	– goli haannu
mix	– missaaunu	show	– dekhaaunu
paint	– rangaaunu	smash (bottle)	– phuTaaunu
peel	– chhoDaaunu	spread out	– phailaaunu
pick(fruit, beans)–	Tipnu	squeeze	– nicharnu
pierce	– pwaalpaarnu	sweep (floor)	– baDhaarnu
pile up	– thupaarnu	take off (clothes)	– phukaalnu
plant (seed)	– ropnu	tear	– chyaatnu
play (a game)	– khelnu	tie (knot)	– baadhnu
play(beat drum)	– bajaaunu	touch/feel	– chhunnu
point at	– dekhaaunu	try/attempt	– kosis garnu
pour	– khanyaaunu	uncover	– kholnu
press	– thichnu	untie	– phukaaunu
pull	– taannu	unwrap	– kholnu
push	– dhakelnu	wash	– dhunu
put on (clothes)	– lagaaunu	wear (clothes)	lagaaunu
roast	– bhuTnu	weave (net, bag,	
rub	– dalnu	mat)	– bunnu
scratch(itchy spot)	– kanyaaunu	weed (a garden)	– goDnu
search for	– khojnu	wipe	– puchhnu
sell	– bechnu	wrap up	– bernu
sew	– siunu		

#### MANUFACTURED ITEMS

axe	– bancharo	door	– Dhokaa
basket	– Doko, Tokari	drum	– maadal
boat	– Dungaa	coal	– gol
charcoal	– koilaa	fence	– baar
cloth	– kapaDaa	fire	– aago
comb	– kaalyo	fish net	jaal
cost/price	– mol	flame	– jwaalaa
crack	– pwaal, chiraa	floor	– bhuil

flute	– bāāsuri	post	– khāābo
garden/farm	– bagaichaa	road/path/trail	– baaTo
ground oven	– chulho	roof	– chhāanaa
hole	– pwaal	rope	– Dori
hook (for fishing)	– balchhi	salt	– nun
house	– ghar	shelter/bush hut	– Taharo
knife	– chakku	sleeping mat	– Dasnaa
knot (in rope)	– gāāTho	smoke	– dhuwāā
line/mark	– chino	soot	– dhwāāso
mat	– gundri	steps/stairs/ladder	– bhāryaang
money	– paisaa	thread	– dhaago
necklace	– haar, maalaa	trap (for birds, animals)	– khor, dharaap paaso
needle	– siyo	village	– gaaū
nest	– gūD	wages/pay	– jyaalaa, talab
ornament	– gahanaa	wall	– parkhaal
oil	– tel	white ash	– kharaani
plate	– thaal	window	– jhyaal
point	– bindu	wound	– ghaau
pole/stake	– khāābo		

## MOTIONS

come	– aaunu	hide (oneself)	– luknu
dance	– naachnu	jump (across/up)	– uphranu
depart/go away	– jaanu	miss (a target)	– nalaagnu
fall	– khasnu	return/come back	– pharkanu
flee/run away	– bhaagnu	run	– dagurnu
flow	– bagnu	swim	– pauDi khelnu
fly	– uDnu	turn	– pharkanu
go	– jaanu	walk	– hiDnu

## MOVING ACTIONS

bring	– lyaaunu	pick up	– uThaaunu
carry on (arms, shoulder etc.)	– boknu	put (down)	– raakhnu
catch	– samaatnu	arise/lift up	– uThaaunu
close/shut	– banda garnu	remove	– haTaaunu
drag	– Taannu	send	– paThaaunu
drop(something)	– khasaalnu	shake	– hallaaunu
fetch (go & bring)	– lyaaunu	steal	– chornu
hide (something)	– lukaannu	take	– linu
lead	– lagnu	take (there)	– lagnu
leave behind	– pachaaDi chhodDnu	throw (away)	– phyāāknu
meet	– bhēTnu	turn (something around, over)	– palTaaunu
open	– kholnu	twist (thread)	– baTaarnu

## NATURAL OBJECTS

bank (of river)	– kinaaar	river	– nadi
cloud	– baadal	sea	– samudra
dust	– dhulo	shade	– chhahaari
flood	– baaDhi	shadow	– chhaayaa
fog	– kuiro	sky	– aakaash
ground	– jamin	spring (of water)	mul
hill	– DāāDaa	star	– taaraa
lake	– taal	stone	– Dhungaa
moon	– chandramaa, jun stream		– kholaa
mountain	– pahaaD	sun	– surya, ghaam
mud	– hilo	valley	– besi, upatyakaa
ocean	– mahaasaagar	water	– paani
plain	– samma	wind	– haawaa
rain	– paani, barshaa		

## OCCUPATIONS

barber	– naau, hajaam	mason	– Dakarmi
blacksmith	– kaami	officer	– aphisar, adhikaari
broker	– dalaal		– hulaaki
businessman	– byaapaari	postman	– kumhaale
butcher	– kasaai, bagare	potter	– nokar
carpenter	– sikarmi	servant	– pasale
clerk	– kaarindaa	shopkeeper	– gaayak
cloth merchant	– kapadaa pasale	singer	– sipaahi
cobbler	– saarki	soldier	– jaasus
contractor	– Thekedaar	spy	– vidyaarthi
cook	– bhaanse	student	– baDhaarne maanchhe
editor	– sampaadak	sweeper	– sikchhak
gardener	– maali		– dhobi
goldsmith	– sunaar	teacher	– lekhak
laborer	– ज्यामी	washerman	
lawyer	– wakil	writer	
magician	– jaadugar		

## ORAL ACTIVITIES

bark (dog)	– bhuknu	scream	– chichchyaaunu
belch	– Dakaarnu	shout	– karaaunu
call out	– bolaaunu	sing	– git gaaunu
cough	– khoknu	smile	– muskuraunu
crow (rooster)	– baasnu	sneeze	– haachchhiu garnu
cry/weep	– runu	snore	– ghurnu
hiccup	– hikka aaunu	speak	– bolnu
hum	– gungunaaunu	spit	– thuknu
laugh	– haasnu	whisper	– saauti garnu
repeat	– dohoryaaunu	whistle	– suselnu
reply	– jawaaph dinu	yawn	– haai garnu

## PERSONS

baby	– bachchaa	old woman	– buDhi
boy	– KeTaa	woman	– swaasni maa-
girl	– keTi		nchhe, aaimai
man	– maanchhe	young man	– tanderi
old man	– buDho	young woman	– taruni

## PLANTS

bamboo	– bāās	leaf	– paat
banaana	– keraa	leaf vegetable	– saagpaat
bark (of tree)	– bokraa	mushrooms	– chyaau
beans	– simi, bhaTmaas	roots	– jaraa
branch	– hāāgaa	seed	– biu
bush/shrub	– jhaaDi	stick	– laTThi
coconut	– nariwal	sugar cane	– ukhu
corn	– makai	sweet potato	– sakhar khanDa
flower	– phul	taro	– piDaalu
forest/woods	– ban	tobacco leaf	– surti
grass	– ghāās	tree	– rukh
ground	– jamin	trunk	– phed

## POSITIONS

above	– maathi	in/inside	– bhitra
behind	– pachhaaDi	near	– najik
beside	– chheumaa	on	– maa, maathi
between	– bichmaa	outside	– baahiraa
far from	– TaaDhaa	under/below	– tala, muni
in front of	– agaaDi		

## POSTURES

be seated	– basi raakhnu	rise/get up	– uThnu
be standing	– uThi raakhnu	sit down	– basnu
bend over	– jhuknu	stand up	– uThnu
lie down	– palTanu	wait	– parkhanu
rest	– aaraam garnu		

## QUANTITIES

all	– sabai	many	– dherai
empty	– khaali	piece	– bhaag, Tukraa
few	– thorai	some	– kehi, thorai
full	– bhari	whole	– sabai, jammai
half	– aadhaa		

## SHAPES

crooked	– baango	smooth	– chillo
hollow	– khokro	solid	– bharilo, khādilo
rough (surface)	– khasro	straight	– sojho, sidhaa
round	– golo		

## SIZE

big	– Thulo	small	– saano
long	– laamo	tall/high	– aglo
narrow	– sāāguro	thick (cloth)	– baaklo
short	– chhoTo	thin (cloth)	– paatalo
short/low	– hocho, chhoTo	wide	– pharaakilo

## SPICES – MASALAA, HERB, ETC.

all spice	– battis masalaa	butter	– makhan
anise	– sōph	cheese	– chij
bay leaf	– tej paat	ghee	– ghiu
cardamon	– sukumel	kerosene	– maTTitel
chilli	– khursaani	mustard oil	– toritel
cinnamon	– daalchini	oil	– tel
cloves	– lwaang	sesame oil	– tilko tel
coriander	– dhaniyaa	sugar (white)	– chini
cumin seed	– jiraa	sugar (brown)	– sakkhar
curry powder	– baara masalaa	cream of wheat	– suji
fenugreek	– methi	flour (corn)	– makaiko piTho
garlic	– lasun	flour (rice)	– chaamalko
ginger	– aduwa	wheat	piTho
mint	– pudinaa	flour (wheat)	– maidaa, aaTaa
nutmeg	– jaaiphal	rice (beaten)	– chiuraa
parsley	– jwaanu	rice (uncooked)	– chaamal
pepper	– marich	rice (cooked)	– bhaat
saffron	– keshar	rice (unhusked)	– dhaan
salt	– nun		
sesame	– til		
tumeric	– besaar		

## SPONTANEOUS EVENTS

blow (wind)	– haawaa bahānu	dry out	– sukaaunu, suknu
burn(wood, fire)	– balnu	fall (rain)	– paani parnu
die	– marnu	melt	– paglanu
dissolve	– galnu	swell	– suninu

## VEGETABLES

asparagus	– kurilo	mustard	– tori
beans	– simi	okra	– raamtoryyaa
beets	– chukandar	onion	– pyaaj
broccoli	– barkaauli	peas	– keraau
cabbage	– bandaa kobi	pepper, chilli	– kharsaani
carrots	– gaajar	bell pepper	– bhāDe khursaani
cauliflower	kaauli	potato	– aalu
chives	– chhyaapi	pumpkin	– pharsi
corn	– makai	radish	– mulaa
cucumber	– kāākro	snake gourd	– chichinDo
eggplant	– bhaanTaa	soyabean	– bhaTmaas
kohlrabi	– gyāāTh kobi	spinach	– saag
lentils	– daal	squash	– iskush
black lentils	– kaalo daal	sweet potato	– sakhar khanDa
red lentils	– musurko daal	taro	– piDaalu
yellow lentils	– raharko daal	tomato	– golbhēDaa
lettuce	– jiriko saag	turnip	– salgam
lima bean	– Thulo simi		



## Conjugation Tables

### Verb 'hunu' to be at (present)

Example: ma nepaalmaa chhu – I am in Nepal.

PRONOUN	AFFIRMATIVE	NEGATIVE
ma	chhu	chhaina
tā	chhas	chhainas
u	chha	chhaina
hami (haru)	chhaū	chhainaū
timi (haru)	chhau	chhainau
uniharū	chhan	chhainan
tapaaī (haru)	hunuhunchha	hunuhunna

### Verb 'hunu' to be (present)

Example: ma bidyarthi hū– I am a student.

PRONOUN	AFFIRMATIVE	NEGATIVE
ma	hū	hoina
tā	hos	hoinas
u	ho	hoina
haami (haru)	hau	hoinaū
timi (haru)	hau	hoinau
uniharū	hun	hoinan
tapaaī (haru)	hunuhunchha	hunuhunna

## Verb 'hunu' to be (past)

Example: ma hijo pokharaamaa thiē – I was in Pokhara yesterday.

PRONOUN	AFFIRMATIVE	NEGATIVE
ma	thiē	thiina
tā	thiis	thiinas
u	thiyo	thiena
haami (haru)	thiyaū	thienau
timi (haru)	thiyau	thienau
uniharu	thie	thienan
tapaal (haru)	hunuhunthyo	hunuhunnathyo

## Simple Present

Example: ma jaanchhu– I go.

PRONOUN	AFFIRMATIVE	NEGATIVE
ma	jaanchhu	jaanna, jāādina
tā	jaanchhas	jāādainas
u	jaanchha	jāādaina
haami (haru)	jaanchhaū	jaannaū, jāādainaū
timi (haru)	jaanchhau	jaannau, jāādainau
uniharu	jaanchhan	jāādainan, jaannan
tapaal (haru)	jaanuhunchha	januhunna

## Present Progressive

**Example:** ma jāā dai chhu – I am going.

PRONOUN	AFFIRMATIVE	NEGATIVE*
ma	jāā dai chhu	jāā dai chhaina
tā	jāā dai chhas	jāā dai chhainas
u	jāā dai chha	jāā dai chhaina
haami (haru)	jāā dai chhaū	jāā dai chhainau
timi (haru)	jāā dai chhau	jāā dai chhainau
uni haru	jāā dai chhan	jāā dai chhainan
tapaai (haru)	jāā dai hunhunchha	jāā dai hunuhunna

\*Although you will sometimes hear this form, the alternative negative form of the progressive tense, is more common. (ma gairaheko chhaina – I am not going.)

## Present Perfect

**Example:** ma gaeko chhu – I have gone.

PRONOUN	AFFIRMATIVE	NEGATIVE
ma	gaeko chhu	gaeko chhaina
tā	gaeko chhas	gaeko chhainas
u	gaeko chha	gaeko chhaina
haami (haru)	gaekaa chhaū	gaekaa chhainau
timi (haru)	gaekaa chhau	gaekaa chhainau
uni haru	gaekaa chhan	gaekaa chhainan
tapaai (haru)	jaanu bhaeko chha	jaanu bhaeko chhaina

## Present Progressive (Alternative Form)

**Example:** ma gairaheko chhu – I am going.

PRONOUN	AFFIRMATIVE	NEGATIVE
ma	gairaheko chhu	gairaheko chhaina
tā	gairaheko chhas	gairaheko chhainas
u	gairaheko chha	gairaheko chhaina
haami (haru)	gairahekaa chhaū	gairahekaa chhainau
timi	gairahekaa chhau	gairahekaa chhainau
uni haru	gairahekaa chhan	gairahekaa chhainan
tapaai (haru)	gairahanu bhaeko chha	gairahanu bhaeko chhaina

## Simple Past: Intransitive Verb

Example: ma gaẽ– I went.

PRONOUN	AFFIRMATIVE	NEGATIVE
ma	gaẽ	gaina
tā	gais	gainas
u	gayo	gaena
haami (haru)	gayaũ	gaenaũ
timi (haru)	gayau	gaenau
uniharū	gae	gaenan
tapaal (haru)	jaanubhayo	jaanubhaena

## Simple Past: Transitive Verb

Example: maile bhaat khaaẽ– I ate rice.

PRONOUN	AFFIRMATIVE	NEGATIVE
maile	khaaẽ	khaaina
taile	khaais	khaainas
usle	khaayo	khaaena
haami (haru) le	khaayaũ	khaaenaũ
timi (haru) le	khaayau	khaaenau
uniharule	khaae	khaaenan
tapaal (haru) le	khaanubhayo	khaanubhaena

## Past Progressive

Example: ma jāā dai theiē – I was going.

PRONOUN	AFFIRMATIVE	NEGATIVE
ma	jāā dai thiē	jāā dai thiina
tā	jāā dai thiis	jāā dai thiinas
u	jāā dai thiyo	jāā dai th na
haami (haru)	jāā dai thiyāū	jāā dai thienāū
timi (haru)	jāā dai thiyau	jāā dai thienau
uniharu	jāā dai thie	jāā dai thienan
tapaal (haru)	jāā dai hunuhunthyo	jāā dai hunuhunnathyo

## Past Perfect

Example: ma gaeko thiē- I had gone.

PRONOUN	AFFIRMATIVE	NEGATIVE
ma	gaeko thiē	gaeko thiina
tā	gaeko thiis	gaeko thiinas
u	gaeko thiyo	gaeko thiena
haami (haru)	gaekaa thiyāū	gaekaa thienāū
timi (haru)	gaekaa thiyau	gaekaa thienau
uniharu	gaekaa thie	gaekaa thienan
tapaal (haru)	jaanu bhaeko thiyo	jaanu bhaeko thiena

## Past Habitual

Example: I used to go—ma jaanthē.

PRONOUN	AFFIRMATIVE	NEGATIVE
ma	jaanthē	jaannathē
tā	jaanthis	jaannathis
u	jaanthyo	jaannathyo
haami (haru)	jaanthyaū	jaannathyaū
timi (haru)	jaanthyaau	jaannathyaau
uniharu	jaanthe	jaannathe
tapaal (haru)	jaanuhunthyo	jaanuhunnathyo

## Unknown Past

PRONOUN	AFFIRMATIVE	NEGATIVE
ma	gaechhu	gainachhu
tā	gaichhas	gainachhas
u	gaechha	gaenachha
haami (haru)	gaechhaū	gaenachhaū
timi (haru)	gaechhau	gaenachhau
uniharu	gaechhan	gaenachhan
tapaal (haru)	jaanu bhaechha	jaanu bhaenachha

## Impertative

ma	jaaū
tā	jaa
u	jaawos
haami (haru)	jaawau
timi (haru)	jaau
uniharu	jaaun
tapaal (haru)	jaanus, jaanuhos, jaanos

## Future Indefinite

Example: ma jaancchhu- I'll go.

PRONOUN	AFFIRMATIVE	NEGATIVE
ma	jaanechhu	jaanechhaina
tā	jaanechhas	jaanechhainas
u	jaanechha	jaanechhaina
haami (haru)	jaanechhaū	jaanechhainau
timi (haru)	jaanechhau	jaanechhainau
uniharu	jaanechhan	jaanechhainan
tapaal (haru)	jaanu hunechha	jaanu hunechhaina

## Future Condition

Example: ma jaaūlaa- I'll go.

ma	jaaūlaa
tā	jaalaas
u	jaalaa
haami(haru)	jaawaūlaa
timi (haru)	jaawaulaa
uniharu	jaalaan
tapaal (haru)	jaanuholaa

# **Reading and Writing Section**



## Writing System

Nepali, like Hindi and Sanskrit, is written in the Devanagari script. It consists of (1) vowels (2) consonants and (3) half letters (conjuncts).

### (1) Vowels

Nepali has two kinds of vowels.

a. Vowel characters: These are used

- (i) in the beginning of a word, Ex.     aaja – today
- (ii) after other vowels     aau – come

b. Vowel signs: These are used after consonants.

Ex.     maathi – above

### (2) Consonants

Each Nepali consonant has an inherent vowel 'a' in it. So when a consonant is recited each is pronounced as though it were followed by the 'a' sound.

### (3) Half letters (Conjuncts)

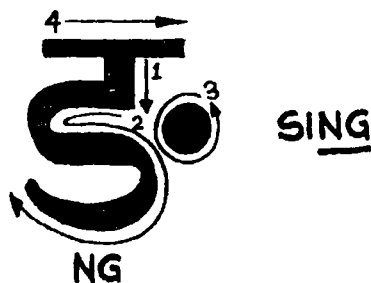
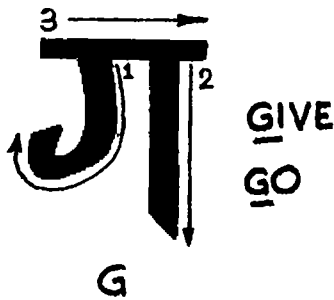
Most Nepali consonant characters have their half forms.

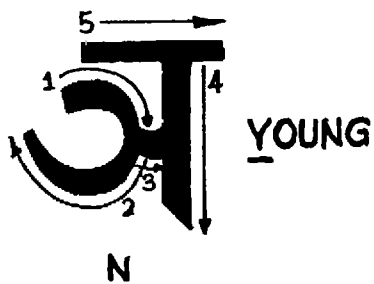
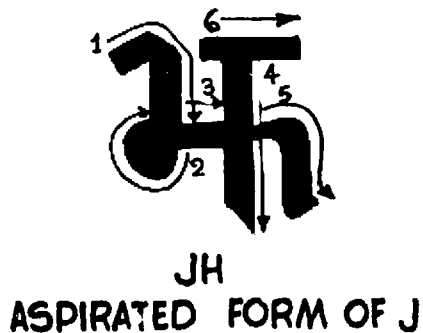
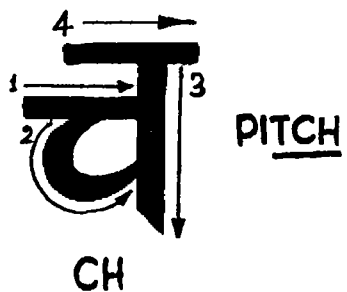
### (4) The use of halant ( , )

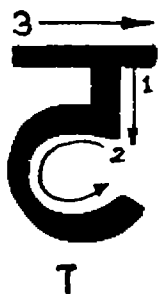
This mark halant is attached to the foot of a consonant to cancel the inherent vowel in the letter. Its use is generally confined to verbal forms. Examples–

आउनुस्	—	aaunus
जानुस्	—	jaanus
हवस्	—	hawas
छन्	—	chhan

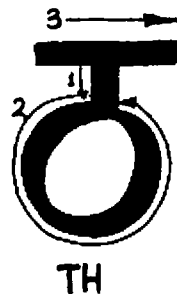
Below are given the Nepali vowels and consonants with arrows showing the most accepted way of drawing them. Alongside most letters is given an English word or words with one or two underlined letters whose pronunciation closely approximates the pronunciation of the Nepali letter.







BETTER



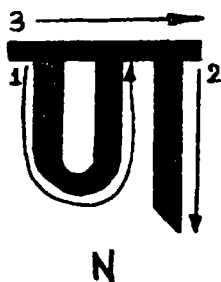
ASPIRATED FORM OF T

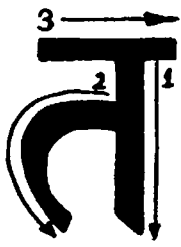


DAY



DH  
ASPIRATED FORM OF D





T  
DENTAL T



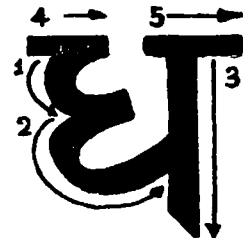
TH

THORN



D

THEY



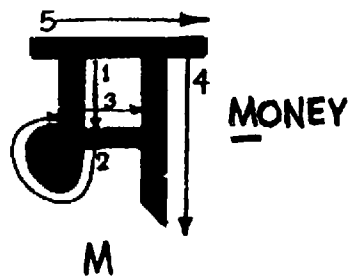
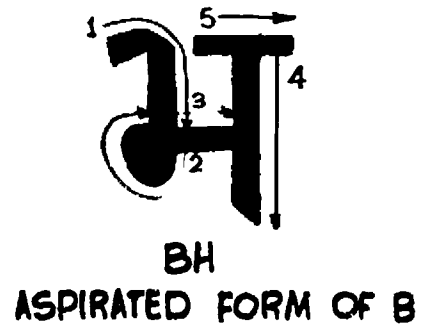
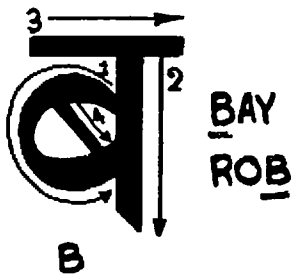
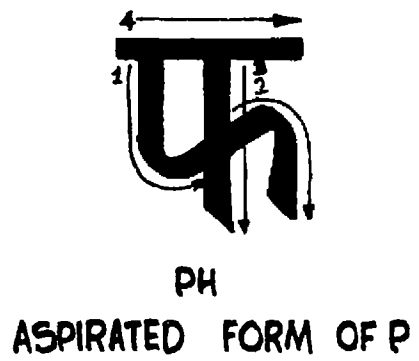
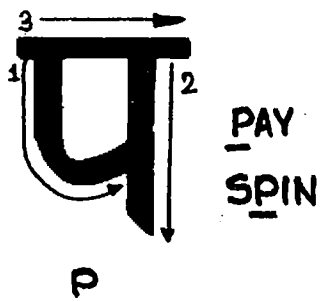
DH

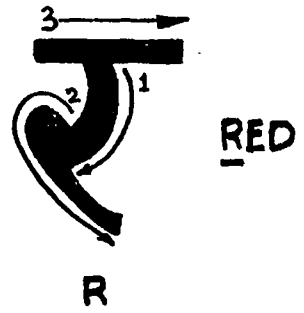
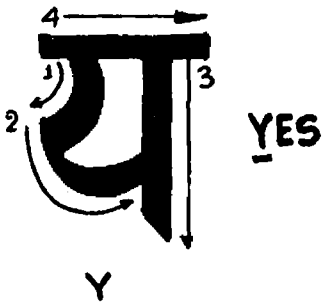
ASPIRATED FORM OF D

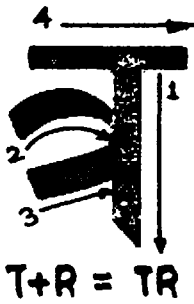
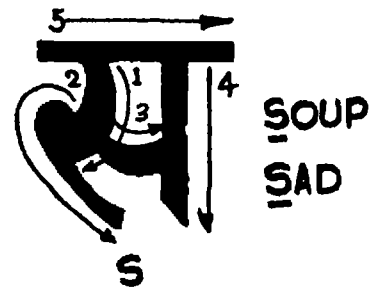
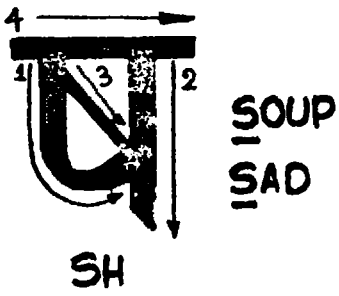


N

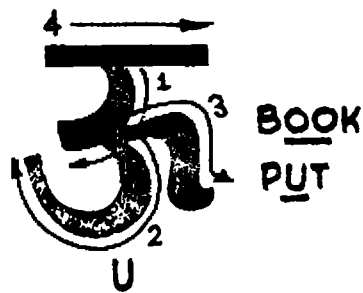
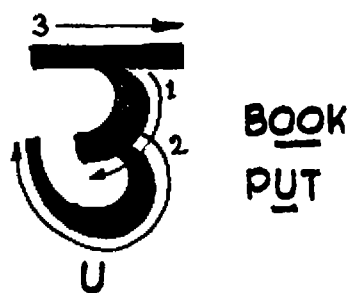
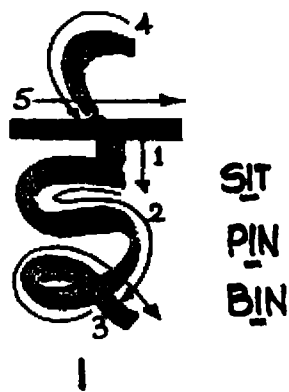
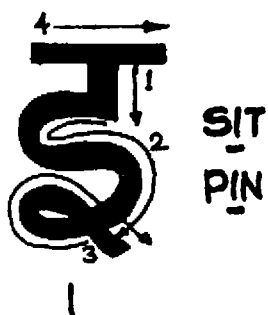
NAME













RED  
GET



A+i = Ai



HOLY



SEWED



SUNG

ANG

## NEPALI ALPHABET

### VOWEL CHARACTERS

अ	आ	इ	ई	उ	ऊ	ए	ऐ	ओ	औ	ऋ
a	aa	i	i	u	u	e	ai	o	au	ri

### VOWEL SIGNS

— ा ि ी ु ू े ै ो ी

ब+Signs.

ब	बा	बि	बी	बु	बू	बे	बै	बो	बौ
ba	baa	bi	bi	bu	bu	be	bai	bo	bau

**CONSONANTS.**    Unvoiced    Unvoiced    Voiced    Voiced    Nasal  
                          Unaspirated    Aspirated    Unaspirated    Aspirated

**Velar**

क	ख	ग	घ	ङ
k	kh	g	gh	ṅ

**Palatal**

च	छ	ज	झ	ञ
ch	chh	j	jh	ṇ

**Retroflex**

ट	ठ	ड	ढ	ण
T	Th	D	Dh	ṇ

**Dental**

त	थ	द	ध	न
t	th	ḍ	dh	n

**Labial**

प	फ	ब	भ	म
P	Ph	b	bh	m

**Semivowels**

य	र	ल	व
y	r	l	w

**Sibilants**

श	ष	स
sh	sh	s

**Glottal Fricative**

ह
h

## Step One

### Consonant characters

क	ल	म	न	स
k	l	m	n	s

### Vowel characters

अ	आ	इ	ई
a	aa	i	i

### Vowel Signs

।	ि	ी
aa	i	i

### Words

कलम	कमल	असल	कल
आमा	नाम	सामान	काम
मसला	किन	सीमाना	मीना
मलाई	हुलम	मानिस	साइकल

## Step Two

### Consonant characters

ख	त	प	र
kh	t	p	r

### Vowel characters

उ	ऊ
u	u

### Vowel Signs

◌	◌
u	u

### Words

खाउ	खाम	खालो	नखाउ	पसल
तर	तिमी	तिनो	तेल	तास
पानी	पात	पान	पुस	पिर
राती	राम	रिस	राई	अमेरिका
नेपाल	रीता	खतम	सात	सरल
सुत	रुख	मुला	कुरा	सुन

Note — Vowel Signs ◌ (u) ◌ (u) are joined differently with the consonant character र (r)

रु रु - रुमाल

## Step Three

### Consonant characters

घ	ज	ट	द	ब
gh	j	T	d	b

### Vowel characters

ए	ओ
e	o

### Vowel Signs

ँ	ौ
e	o

### Words

घर	जाउ	माघ	धाम
आउ	जात	जना	जुन
टाउको	पेट	काट	जति
बाइ	देउ	हुइ	दिशा
दोलखा	दिन	दाल	पोखरा
बस	बा	बाजे	बाट
अबेला	एघार	ओरालो	बाटो

### Sentences

म      अमेरिका      जाने ।  
तिमी के खाने ? म      पानो खाने ।  
को बजार जाने ? राम      बजार जाने ।  
तिमीले के खाएको ?      मासु खाएको ।

## Step Four

### Consonant characters

ग	च	ड	थ	य
g	ch	D	th	y

### Vowel characters

ऐ  
ai

### Vowel Signs

ai

### Words

गाई	नते	गीत	गुरू
चिया	चिसो	चामल	चैत
डेरा	डर	चाड	घडी
थाल	कथा	थकाई	थोरै
यो	ऐना	यता	गयो

### Sentences

गाई	बारीमा	गयो ।
मलाई	यो	किताब देउ ।
पानो	तातो	छ ।
चोया	मोठो	छैन ।
मैले	खाना	खाएको छैन ।



## Step Five

### Consonant characters

chh	Th	ph	h
छ	ठ	फ	ह

### Vowel Characters

औ  
au

### Vowel Sign

े  
au

### Words

छन	छाता	पछ्छाडि	छोरो
टिक	काठ	कोठा	बाठो
फेरो	फोहर	सफा	फुल
हाम्रो	हिमाल	हजुर	होचो
औलो	औसत	औकात	औपचारिक

### Sentences

माइकको घर अमेरिका हो । दुई महिना अगाडि उ नेपाल  
आयो । उ हिजो वसन्त पोखरा गयो । पोखरा धेरै राम्रो  
इला छ । पोखरामा ताल र नदी छन् । म पनि भोलि  
पोखरा जाने । तिम्रो कहिले जाने नी ?

## Step Six

### Consonant characters

झ	ढ	ध	भ	व
jh	Dh	dh	bh	w

### Half – letters (Conjuncts)

न	+	छ	=	न्छ
त	+	छ	=	त्छ
स	+	छ	=	स्छ

### Words

भोला	भरना	ढोलो	टाढा
धारो	दूध	भाइ	भोलि
कतिपटा	वजन	वकील	वहाँ
खन्छ	मन्छ	सुत्छु	बस्छौं

### Sentences

तिमी	भोली	कस्को	घरमा	जान्छौं ।
सुन्तला	कस्तो	छ ?	गुलियो	छ ।
उस्को	आमा	वन्दीपुरमा	बस्नु	हुन्छ ।
नेपाली भन्दा हिन्दी धेरै मानिस बोल्छन् ।				

## Step Seven

### Consonant characters

ङ	ञ	ण	श	ष
ng	ya	na	sh	sh

Nasal modifiers	ँ ( ā )	ं ( ī )
-----------------	------------------	------------------

### Half – letters (Conjuncts)

ल	+	प	=	ल्प
क	+	छ	=	क्छ
ख	+	न	=	खन
ब	+	द	=	ब्द

### Words

भाङ्ग	विष्णु	शरीर	शहर
षोडशी	विष	पाल्पा	सक्छ
शान्ति	शनिवार	सुब्बा	भाषा

### Sentences

पाल्पाबाट हिमालय देखिन्छ ।  
शान्ति शनिवार मन्दिरमा जान्छे  
रक्षसी भन्दा जाँड मस्तो हुन्छ ।  
किताब भोलाबाट भिक्नुस् र पढ्न थाल्नुस् ।  
तपाईंलाई कतिवटा नेपाली शब्द आउँछन् ?

## Step Eight

### Consonant characters

क्ष	त्र	ज्ञ
ksh	tr	gyn

### Half – letters (Conjuncts)

च	+	च	=	च्च
ग	+	घ	=	गघ
म	+	म	=	म्म
ज	+	य	=	ज्य
प	+	त	=	प्त

### Words

कक्षा	क्षत्री	मात्रं	ज्ञान
भाग्य	सम्भ	ज्याला	हृत्ता
कच्चा	जम्मा	बच्चा	नत्रमने

### Sentences

मेरो छोरी चार कक्षामा छे ।  
उस्को जात क्षत्री हो ।  
उस्को उमेर सत्र मात्रं भयो ।  
भलाई विज्ञान सजिलो लाग्यो ।  
पोखरावाट पाल्पासम्म हिडेर जान  
एक हृत्ता लाग्छ ।  
भरिघाले एक दिनको ज्याला कान लियो ?

## Step Nine

### Half – letters (Conjuncts)

त	+	स	=	त्स
न	+	न	=	न्न
ट	+	ट	=	ट्ट
क	+	क	=	क्क
ड	+	ड	=	ड्ड
क	+	त	=	क्त

### Words

सत्तरी	उन्नाइस	ठट्टा	पक्का
अड्डा	भक्त	छपन्न	चौपट्ट

### Sentences

यो किताब सबभन्दा पहिले उन्नाइस सय चौहत्तरमा  
छापेको हो ।

यो कुरा पक्का हो कि ठट्टा मात्र हो ?

अफिसलाई नेपालीमा अड्डा भनिन्छ ।

उस्को नाम भक्तलाल हो ।

## Step Ten

### Half letters (Conjuncts)

घ + घ = छ

ण + ट = ण्ट

भ + य = भ्य

फ + न = फन

### Words

सुछघर      घण्टा      भाण्टा      झ्याल  
आपनो      पपाउरो      काठभाण्डू      पपाक्नुस्

### Sentences

मेरो      कोठा      सफा सुछघर छ ।  
यहाँबाट स्वयम्भू पुग्न एक घण्टा लाग्छ ।  
मेरो      झ्यालबाट हिमाल देखिन्छ ।  
तिमि      आपनो      किताब पढ ।  
भाण्टा      एक      किसिमको तरकारी हो ।

## Step Eleven

### Half letters (Conjuncts)

क	+	र	=	क्र
ट	+	ठ	=	ट्ठ
र	+	छ	=	र्र्छ
म	+	र	=	म्र
र	+	ह	=	र्र्ह
व	+	र	=	व्र

### Words

गर्छ	राम्रो	सोन्ह	कृष्ण
बान्ह	इन्द्र	पन्ध्र	दृश्य
चिट्ठी	काँक्रो	प्रधान	सान्है

### Sentences

आज मेरो केटी साथीको चिट्ठी आयो ।  
उस्ताई काँक्रो मन पर्देन ।  
नेपाल राम्रो र रमाइलो देश हो ।  
एक जोर चप्पलको सोल्ह रुपियाँ पर्छ ।  
बन्दीपुरबाट धेरै राम्रो दृश्य देखिन्छ ।

## Step Twelve

### Half-letters (Conjuncts)

द	+	व	=	द्व
घ	+	द	=	द्व
द	+	म	=	द्व
द	+	य	=	द्व
स	+	ल	=	स्ल
क्ष	+	ण	=	क्षण
ट	+	य	=	टय

### Words

पद्धति पद्य पद्यिनो  
पद्य सिल्लो तीक्ष्ण  
फट्याङ्ग्रा द्वार द्वापर

### Sentences

उस्को नाम पद्य हो ।  
मलाई गद्य भन्दा पद्य मन पर्छ ।  
कस्तो सिल्लो रहेछ ?  
फट्याङ्ग्रा उफिदै छ ।  
ढोकालाई संस्कृतमा द्वार भन्छन् ।



## Step Thirteen

### Half – letters (Conjuncts)

क्ष	+	य	=	क्षय		
श	+	य	=	श्य		
ष	+	ण	=	ष्ण		
ञ	+	ज	=	ञ्ज		
ङ	+	ग	=	ङ्ग		
ग	+	र	+	ई	=	ग्री
न	+	थ	+	य	=	न्यथ

### Words

श्याम	विष्णु	भाञ्ज	लक्ष्म
विश्व	चङ्गा	श्रीमान	हुन्थ्यो
लक्ष्मण	भाञ्जी	दङ्ग	

### Sentences

श्याम विष्णु को भाञ्ज हो ।  
मेरो लक्ष्म डाक्टर हुनु हो ।  
अमेरिकामा म गाईको मासु खान्थे ।  
सरिताको श्रीमान सन्धै रात्री सितार बजाउँ-न् ।

## Step Fourteen

### Half – letters (Conjuncts)

ट + न = ट्न

ढ + छ = ढ्छ

ड + छ = ड्छ

छ + य = छ्य

### Words

काट्छ साट्छ पढ्छ ढाँट्छ  
बम्छ्यो पढ्काउनुभयो हिड्छ

### Sentences

तिम्नो कोट मेरोसित साट्छ्यो त ?  
हाम्रो भाइ विश्व विद्यालयमा पढ्छ ।  
यसपाली तीहारमा पटका पढ्काउनु भयो त ?  
हात्ति मन्दा बाघ छिटो हिड्छ ।

## Step Fifteen

### Half – letters (Conjuncts)

ड	+	र	=	ड्र				
ह	+	य	=	ह्य				
ढ	+	थ	+	य	=	ढ्थ्य		
त	+	थ	+	य	=	त्थ्य		
र	+	थ	+	य	=	र्य्य		
ङ	+	ग	+	य	=	ङ्ग्य		
च	+	च	+	य	=	च्च्य		
र	+	ह	+	ल	+	य	=	रहल्य

### Words

ड्रम, ह्यांकुलो, पढ्थ्यो, ओल्ल्छो  
समात्थ्यो, गथ्यो, ब्यंग्य, घच्च्याउनु

### Sentences

ड्रममा मट्टितेल छ कि छैन ?  
मलाई नघच्च्याउ न ।  
मदन तल ओल्ल्छो कि ओल्ल्छोको छैन ।  
तिमी बेलायतमा के काम गथ्यो ?  
उ अमेरिकामा हुँदा निकै सिनेमा हेथ्यो ।

## REFERENCES

1. Clark, T. W. — Introduction to Nepali
2. Dhungel, Tulsi Prasad — Nepali Rachana Shilpa
3. Hall, Eugene J. & Flamm, Carol S. — Orientation in American English
4. Pandey, Gopal — Rachana Keshar
5. Parajuli, Krishna Prasad — Prayogatmak Bhashatatwa
6. Parajuli, Krishna Prasad — Ramro Rachana Mitho Nepali
7. Pokhrel, Bal Krishna — Nepali Bhasha ra Sahitya
8. Pradhan, Pras Mani — Nepali Byakaran
7. Regmi, Chudamani Upadhyaya — Nepali Bhashako Utpatti
10. Risal, Bishnu Gopal — Nepali Bhasha ra Byakaran  
& Shiva Gopal
11. Sapkota, Mahanan da — Dhwaniko Dhanda
12. Sharma, Bal Chandra — Nepali Shabdakosh
13. Sharma, Somnath — Madhya Chandrika
14. Shrivastava, Dayananda — Nepali Language : Its History & Development
15. Turner, R. L. — A Comparative & Etymological Dictionary of the Nepali Language